



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edw T 918.20.117




3 2044 097 065 783



HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY

T. Sparhawk



This book was formerly owned  
by Dr. Thomas Sparhawk, of  
Amesbury, Mass., an intimate  
friend of the poet Whittier.

Sum. 18







THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN AND ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR;

DESIGNED  
TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,  
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

---

By ALEXANDER ADAM, L. L. D.  
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

---

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et  
quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis quam ostentationis. Ne quis  
igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa; quia interiora velut mæris  
hujus aduocibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modò acutere ingenia  
puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque traditionem ac scientiam possit  
*Quintilian, l. 4, 5.*

---

FIRST ALBANY, FROM THE FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION,  
WITH IMPROVEMENTS.

---

Recommended by the University at Cambridge (Mass.), to be used by  
those who are intended for that Seminary.

---

ALBANY:  
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY E. AND E. HOSFORD.

---

18207

1871

1872

1873

1874

1875

1876

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN AND ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR;

DESIGNED  
TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,  
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

By ALEXANDER ADAM, L. L. D.  
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

*Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, quæ quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa; quia interiora velut sacro hujus aduentibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo scire ingenia puerilis, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit*  
*Quintilian, l. 4, 5.*

FIRST ALBANY, FROM THE FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION,  
WITH IMPROVEMENTS.

Recommended by the University at Cambridge (Mass.), to be used by  
those who are intended for that Seminary.

ALBANY:  
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY E. AND E. HOSFORD.

1820

spicuous. The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. Lily was made first master of St. Paul's school in London, by Dr. Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was contemporary with Despauter. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors; as, *Sanctius, Alvarus, Scioppius, Kirkwood, Watt, Ruddiman, &c.* to improve on the plan of Despauter and Lily; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin verse; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions to a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from Ruddiman's Grammar; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys; and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book; and such as choose it, may have Lily's rules, Watt's rules, or any other substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode* or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar in French verse. Some authors in England, as, *Clarke, Phillips, &c.* have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words

and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because, although the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning. Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose: Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage: and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short a time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and to tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the ancient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin. And when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less

requisite in England ; though even there, in the opinion of Dr. Lowth, to use his own words, "the connexion of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service."\*

EDINBURGH, Oct. 25, 1793.

*\* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated Cuddesdon, Sept. 27, 1771.*



# CONTENTS.



	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
<b>Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which</b>		<b>Signification of the different</b>	
<i>treats of Letters,</i>	1	<i>Tenses</i>	78
<b>Diphthongs</b>	2	<b>Verbs of the First Conjugation</b>	81
<b>Syllables</b>	3	<i>Second Conju.</i>	84
		<i>Third Conju.</i>	87
		<i>Fourth Conju.</i>	97
<b>Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which</b>		<b>Deponent and common Verbs</b>	99
<i>treats of Words,</i>	ib.	<b>Irregular Verbs</b>	102
<b>Division of Words or Parts of</b>		<b>Defective Verbs</b>	107
<b>Speech</b>	4	<b>Impersonal Verbs</b>	108
<b>The Article—wanting in Latin</b>	ib.	<b>Redundant Verbs</b>	110
<b>I. Noun or Substantive</b>	5	<b>Obsolete Conjugation</b>	111
<b>English Nouns</b>	6	<b>Derivation and Composition</b>	
<b>Latin Nouns</b>	7	<i>of Verbs</i>	ib.
<b>Declension of Nouns</b>	ib.	<b>IV. Participle</b>	112
<b>Gender of Nouns</b>	8	<b>V. Adverb</b>	113
<b>First Declension</b>	11	<b>VI. Preposition</b>	116
<b>Second Declension</b>	15	<b>VII. Interjection</b>	118
<b>Third Declension</b>	21	<b>VIII. Conjunction</b>	ib.
<b>Fourth Declension</b>	34		
<b>Fifth Declension</b>	36		
<b>Irregular Nouns</b>	ib.	<b>Part III. SYNTAX, or CON-</b>	
<b>Division of Nouns, according to</b>		<b>STRUCTION, which treats of</b>	
<i>their signification &amp; derivation</i>	42	<i>Sentences,</i>	121
<b>Adjective</b>	43	<b>Division of Sentences into</b>	
<b>Nominal Adjectives</b>	49	<b>Simple and Compound.</b>	ib.
<b>Comparison of Adjectives</b>	51	<b>I. Simple Sentences</b>	122
<b>II. Pronoun</b>	53	<b>Concord or Agreement of</b>	
<b>English Pronouns</b>	ib.	<b>Words in Simple Sentences</b>	ib.
<b>Latin Pronouns</b>	54		
<b>1. Simple Latin Pronouns</b>	ib.	<b>Government of words in Sim-</b>	
<b>2. Compound Latin Pronouns</b>	57	<b>ple Sentences</b>	126
<b>III. Verb</b>	58	<b>I. Government of Substantives</b>	ib.
<b>English Verbs</b>	60	<b>II. Government of Adjectives</b>	128
<b>Conjugation of Latin Verbs</b>	63	<b>III. Government of Verbs</b>	132
<b>First Conjugation</b>	68	<b>1. Verbs governing one case</b>	ib.
<b>Second Conjugation</b>	73	<b>2. Verbs governing two cases</b>	137
<b>Third Conjugation</b>	75	<b>Construction of Passive Verbs</b>	140
<b>Fourth Conjugation</b>	76	<i>of Impersonal Verbs</i>	141
<b>Formation of the different parts</b>		<i>of the Infinitive</i>	143
<b>of Latin Verbs</b>	77	<i>of participles, &amp;c.</i>	ib.

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
Construction of Gerunds	144	2. Repetition of Words	195
of Supines	145	3. Figures of Thought	196
of Adverbs	146		
Government of Adverbs	147	Part IV. Prosody, <i>which</i>	
Construction of Prepositions	148	<i>treats of the Quantity of</i>	
of Circumstances	153	<i>Syllables, of Accent, and</i>	
1. Price	ib.	<i>Verse,</i>	198
2. Manner and Cause	ib.	I. Quantity of Syllables	ib.
3. Place	154	1. Quantity of first and	
4. Measure and Distance	156	middle Syllables	199
5. Time	ib.	2. Quantity of final Syllables	205
II. Compound Sentences	157	Quantity of Derivatives	
Sentences are compounded		and Compounds	208
by Relatives and Conjunctions	ib.	II. Accent	209
Construction of Relatives	ib.	III. Verse	210
of Conjunctions	160	The measuring of Verses by	
of Comparatives	163	Feet, or Scanning	211
The Ablative Absolute	165	Different kinds of Verse	ib.
		Figures in Scanning	213
		Different kinds of Poems	215
		Combination of Verses in	
		Poems	216
		Different kinds of Verse in	
		Horace and Buchanan	217
		English Verse	218
APPENDIX to SYNTAX ;		Appendix I. Punctuation,	
containing		Capitals, &c.	222
I. Various Signification and			
Construction of Verbs	167	Ap. II. Rules from Ruddi-	
II. Figurative Construction,		man's Grammar	225
or Figures of Syntax	184		
III. Analysis and Translation	186		
IV. Different kinds of Style	189		
V. Figures of Rhetoric	191		
1. Figures of Words or			
Tropes	ib.		

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN AND ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR.

---

**GRAMMAR** is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences make up the whole subject of Grammar.

**LETTERS.**

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, W, w.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p*, in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q*, and *g*; but *b, d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c.* but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are, *x, z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks*, or *gz*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

*Y* in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

*H* by some is not accounted a letter but only a breathing.

## DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong, is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au, eu, ei*; as in *aurum, Eurus, omnia*. To these some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or *in cui*, and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as, *aetas*, or *ætas*; *oe*, or *æ*; as *poena*, or *pœna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas, poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs the just pronunciation of which, practice alone can teach.

In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

### SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *spondeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-utor*, *in-ops*, *propter-ea*, *et-enim*, *rel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

*Observe*, A long syllable is thus marked [ˉ]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [˘]; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus, [ˊ]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

### WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ēgō*, I; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius* impious; *dēdōceo*, I unteach; *ēgōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piētas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction*; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the **ARTICLE**.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

*A* is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite Article*.

*A* is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

*A man* means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

*The* placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion, the ox, &c.*

*A* can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number; *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men, a few, a great many men.*

*The* is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, "*the wiser*;" "*the better*;" "*the more I think of it, the better I like it.*"

## NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

## SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.*

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

*Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar, Rome.*

*Common names* stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "*He is an Alexander*;" or, "*The Alexander of his age.*"

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is

spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*; that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages; this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, or the king; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

### ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the *genitive*, or *possessive case*, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman, his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justice, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*; but here are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king*, *kings*; *church*, *churches*; *brush*, *brushes*; *witness*, *witnesses*; *fox*, *foxes*; *leaf*, *leaves*; in which last and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as *ox*, *oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren*, *children*, *kine*, *swine*, *women*, *men*, &c for *brotheren*, *sowen*, &c. Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren*, but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry*, *cherries*; *city*, *cities*. *Cherry's*, *city's*, &c, are in the possessive case.

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly; as, *mouse*, *mice*; *louse*, *lice*; *tooth*, *teeth*; *foot*, *feet*; *goose*, *geese*, &c.

The words *sheep*, *deer*, are the same in both numbers.



Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form; as, *wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, &c.* and *bellows, scissors, lungs, bowels, &c.*

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender; as, *prince, princess; actor, actress; lion, lioness; hero, heroine; duke, duchess.*

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender: unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines*; or of the moon, *she shines.*

### LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural.*

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions.*

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cādo*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *æ* diphthong; the second has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *us*; and the fifth has *ei* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

### GENERAL RULES of Declension.

I. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in

both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative, as, *Thom-is*, *Thoma*; *Anchises*, *Anchise*; *Pāris*, *Parī*; *Panthus*, *Panthu*; *Pallas*, *-antis*; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ō Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrātes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais*; *Mysis*, *Pallas*, *-adis*, the goddess *Minerva*, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duōdēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.		<i>a king</i> ,	Nom.		<i>kings</i> ,
Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>a king</i> ,	Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>a king</i> ,	Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Acc.		<i>a king</i> ,	Acc.		<i>kings</i> ,
Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>king</i> ,	Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by, a king</i> :		Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by, kings</i> .	

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.		<i>the king</i> ,	Nom.		<i>the kings</i> ,
Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>the king</i> ,	Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>the kings</i> ,
Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>the king</i> ,	Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings</i> ,
Acc.		<i>the king</i> ,	Acc.		<i>the kings</i> ,
Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>king</i> ,	Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by, the king</i> :		Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by, the kings</i> .	

#### GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *honus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

### GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômêrus*, Homer; *pâter*, a father; *poëta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hêlêna*, Helen; *mûlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *mâter*, a mother; *sôrör*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

*Hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hiç pârêns*, a father; *hæc pârêns*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adolescens, } a young man,	Conviva, a guest.	Obsec, an hostage.
Juvenis, } or woman.	Custos, a keeper.	Patrueus, a cousin-german,
Affinis, a relation by marriage.	Dux, a leader.	by the father's side.
clage.	Hæres, an heir.	Præs, a surety.
Antistes, a prelate.	Hostis, an enemy.	Princeps, a prince or priest.
Auctor, an author.	Infans, an infant.	cess.
Augur, a soothsayer.	Interpres, an interpreter.	Sacerdos, a priest or priest.
Canis, a dog or bitch.	Judex, a judge.	ess.
Civis, a citizen.	Martyr, a martyr.	Sus, a swine.
Cliens, a client.	Miles, a soldier.	Testis, a witness.
Comes, a companion.	Municipes, a burgess.	Vates, a prophet.
Conjux, a husband or wife.	Nemo, no body.	Vindex, an avenger.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leæna*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mûla*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advêna*, a stranger; *agricôla*, a husbandman; *asseccla*, an attendant; *accôla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *optifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *opêræ*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigilia*,

\* Conjux, atque parens, infans, patrueus, et hæres.

Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles, et hostis.

Augur, et antistes, juvenis, conviva, sacerdos,

Municipes, vates adolescens, civis, et auctor.

Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, boque, canisque,

Interpresque, cliens, princeps, præs, martyr, et pæges.

*excūbia*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine

## OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *āquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmīna*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fēmīna passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprīlis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Africus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tiberis*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sōracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine: as, *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city of Corinth, *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, *-ados*, and *Odysseā*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Ænēis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil's; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's Comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, *-idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage: *hoc Albion*, Britain: *hoc Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Præneste*, Juvenal, iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *ōleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cýttus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree;

*lōtus*, the lot-tree; *cypressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, *ēris*, the cork-tree; *stīler*, *-ēris*, the osier; *rōbur*, *-ōris*, oak of the hardest kind; *acer*, *-ēris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercētum*, *esculētum*, *salīctum*, *frūticētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum*, or *mālum*, an apple: *pīrum*, a pear; *ebēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

ONS. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*. Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ*, diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *a*; Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *arum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: thus,

Singular.		Plural.		Terminations.
N. penna,	a pen;	N. pennæ,	pens;	a, æ,
G. pennæ,	of a pen;	G. pennarum,	of pens;	æ, arum,
D. pennæ,	to a pen;	D. pennis,	to pens;	æ, is,
A. pennam,	a pen;	A. pennas,	pens;	am, as,
V. penna,	Open;	V. pennæ,	O pens;	a, æ,
A. pennā,	with a pen;	A. pennis,	with pens;	a, is.

In like manner decline,

<i>Acerra</i> , a censer.	<i>Amurea</i> , the lees of oil.	<i>Arrha</i> , an earnest penny.
<i>Aeta</i> , the shore	<i>Anetha</i> , an handmaid.	<i>Arvina</i> , fat
<i>Æra</i> , a period of time.	<i>Ænehora</i> , an anchor.	<i>Ascia</i> , an axe.
<i>Ærumna</i> , tail	<i>Anguilla</i> , an eel.	<i>Attilæta</i> , m. a wrestler.
<i>Agriçola</i> , a husbandman.	<i>Ausa</i> , a handle.	<i>Aula</i> , a hall.
<i>Ala</i> , a wing.	<i>Antenna</i> , a sail-yard.	<i>Aura</i> , a breeze
<i>Alapa</i> , a blow.	<i>Antlia</i> , a pump.	<i>Auriga</i> , m. a charioteer.
<i>Alauda</i> , a lark.	<i>Aqua</i> , water.	<i>Avia</i> , a grandmother.
<i>Alga</i> , sea-weed	<i>Æquila</i> , an eagle.	<i>Axilla</i> , the arm pit.
<i>Aluta</i> , tanned leather.	<i>Ala</i> , an altar.	<i>Balena</i> , a whale.
<i>Ambrōsia</i> , the food of the gods.	<i>Aranea</i> , a spider.	<i>Barba</i> , a beard.
<i>Amelia</i> , an aunt, the father's sister	<i>Arca</i> , a chest	<i>Bellua</i> , any large beast.
<i>Amphōra</i> , a cask.	<i>Ardea</i> , & <i>-cola</i> , a heron.	<i>Bestia</i> , a beast.
<i>Ampulla</i> , a jug, plur. <i>dombagæ</i> .	<i>Area</i> , an open place.	<i>Beta</i> , beer, an herb.
	<i>Arēna</i> , sand.	<i>Bibliopola</i> , a bookseller.
	<i>Argilla</i> , potter's earth.	<i>Bibliōtēca</i> , a library.
	<i>Arista</i> , an ear of corn.	<i>Blatta</i> , a moth.

- Bractea, a thin leaf of gold.  
 Brassica, cabbagewort.  
 Bruma, winter.  
 Bulla, a bubble, a ball or boss.  
 Bursa, an ex-hide.  
 Caliga, a kind of shoe set with nails.  
 Caltha, marygold.  
 Calva, & calvaria, a skull.  
 Calumnia, slander.  
 Cămena, a music, a song.  
 Cămera, a vault.  
 Campăna, a bell.  
 Canna, a cane or reed.  
 Candela, a candle.  
 Capra, a she-goat.  
 Capsa, a coffe.  
 Carina, the keel of a ship.  
 Casa, a cottage.  
 Castanea, a chestnut.  
 Cătipulta, an engine to cast darts.  
 Căteua, a chain.  
 Căterva, a body of men.  
 Căthedra, a chair, a pulpit.  
 Cauda, the tail.  
 Caula, a sheep-cote.  
 Causa, a cause.  
 Căverna, a cavern.  
 Căvilla, a banter.  
 Cella, a cell.  
 Cerna, war.  
 Căremonia, a ceremony.  
 Cervisia, ale, beer.  
 Căruia, white lead, paint.  
 Cetră, a square target.  
 Charta, paper.  
 Chordă, a string.  
 Cleada, a kind of insect.  
 Cleidna, a stork.  
 Cleidta, hemlock.  
 Ciuhăra, an artichoke.  
 Cista, a chest.  
 Cisterna, a cistern.  
 Clăhăra, a harp.  
 Clava, a club.  
 Clepsydra, an hour-glass.  
 Cloaca, a sink.  
 Cochlea, a snail.  
 Coena, a supper.  
 Columba, a pigeon.  
 Căma, the hair.  
 Cămădia, a comedy.  
 Concha, a shell.  
 Căpia, plenty.  
 Căpula, a bond.  
 Corăgia, a shoe-latchet.  
 Cădăna, a crown, a circle.  
 Cortina, a cauldron.  
 Costa, a rib.  
 Coxa, the haunch.  
 Crăpula, a ruffie.  
 Crătera, a cup.  
 Crăticăla, a gridiron.  
 Crăna, a notch.  
 Crăpida, a slipper.  
 Crăta, chalk.  
 Crăsta, a crest.  
 Crăuăna, a purse.  
 Crusta, & -um, a morsel.  
 Căletta, a cushion.  
 Călina, a kitchen.  
 Culpa, a fault.  
 Cămăra, a corn basket.  
 Căpa, a tun.  
 Căra, care.  
 Căria, a senate-house.  
 Cărgăna, a hedge-sparrow.  
 Cămba, a boat.  
 Dăcempăda, a pole of ten feet.  
 Dieta, diet, food.  
 Dălăbra, an axe.  
 Drachma, a drachm, a weight or coin.  
 Epistola, a letter.  
 Erea, a bait.  
 Făba, a bean.  
 Făbula, a fable.  
 Făma, fame.  
 Fărina, meal.  
 Fascia, a bandage.  
 Făvilla, embers.  
 Făneștra, a window.  
 Făra, a wild beast.  
 Fărua, a rod.  
 Făstăca, the shoot of a tree.  
 Fibra, a fibre.  
 Făbula, a clasp.  
 Fidelia, an earthen vessel.  
 Fămbria, a fringe.  
 Făclăna, a bag, or basket.  
 Făstăca, a rammer.  
 Făstăla, a pipe.  
 Flamma, a flame.  
 Fămăna, a woman.  
 Forma, a form.  
 Formica, an ant.  
 Fossa, a ditch.  
 Făvca, a pit.  
 Fămea, a short spear.  
 Făclăca, a sea-fowl.  
 Funda, a sting.  
 Furca, a fork.  
 Făclăna, a trident.  
 Găleă, an helmet.  
 Gallina, a hen.  
 Gangrena, an eating ulcer.  
 Gaza, a treasure.  
 Gemma, a gem.  
 Găna, the cheek.  
 Gănișta, broom.  
 Găngăna, the gum.  
 Glărea, gravel.  
 Glăba, a clod.  
 Găla, the gullet.  
 Gutta, a drop.  
 Hăbăna, a vein.  
 Hăra, a hog-sty.  
 Hărua, a sacrifice.  
 Hasta, a spear.  
 Hădăra, ivy.  
 Herba, an herb.  
 Herma, v. -ca, m. a statue of Mercury.  
 Hernia, a rupture.  
 Hăla, a sausage.  
 Hăra, an hour.  
 Hăvia, a victim.  
 Hydria, a water-pot.  
 Iactăna, loss.  
 Jănuă, a gate.  
 Idea, a form, an idea.  
 Idiota, m. an illiterate person.  
 Ignămăna, an affront.  
 Illecebra, an allurements.  
 Impensa, expense.  
 Indigēna, m. a native.  
 Inedia, hunger.  
 Infăla, a mitre.  
 Infăria, a wrong.  
 Inopia, want.  
 Inălăta, a fringe.  
 Inălăta, an island.  
 Inălăta, elecampane, an herb.  
 Invidia, envy.  
 Ira, anger.  
 Juba, the mane.  
 Lăcerua, a riding-coat.  
 Lăcerua, a lizard.  
 Lăclăna, a fringe.  
 Lăcryma, a tear.  
 Lăclăna, lettuce.  
 Lăclăna, a ditch.  
 Lăclăna, a flagon.  
 Lăclăna, a ditch.  
 Lăclăna, a sorcerer.  
 Lăclăna, a plate.  
 Lăclăna, wood.  
 Lancea, a lance or spear.  
 Lăclăna, m. a fencing-master.  
 Larva, a mask.  
 Lăclăna, a lantern.  
 Lăclăna, a house of office.  
 Lăclăna, a sedan or chair.  
 Lăclăna, a band.  
 Lăclăna, the leprosy.  
 Libra, a pound.  
 Lăclăna, a latchet.  
 Lima, a file.  
 Linea, a line.  
 Lingua, the tongue.  
 Lăclăna, a ridge or furrow.  
 Lăclăna, a letter.  
 Locusta, a locust.  
 Lăclăna, a light.  
 Luna, the moon.  
 Lusclăna, a nightingale.  
 Lympha, water.  
 Lăclăna, a tyre.  
 Măclăna, a machine.  
 Maclăna, a kneading-trough.  
 Măclăna, a stain.  
 Măclăna, the cheek-bone.  
 Măclăna, a calm.  
 Malva, a mallow.  
 Mamma, a pap.  
 Măclăna, a sleeve.  
 Măclăna, a wallet.  
 Mappa, a napkin.  
 Măclăna, a pearl.  
 Marra, a mattock.  
 Massa, a lump.  
 Măclăna, matter, stuff, timber.  
 Măclăna, the mother's sister.  
 Matta, a mat. or mattress.  
 Măclăna, a chamber-pot.  
 Măclăna, marrow.  
 Membrăna, a thin skin, a film; parchment.  
 Măclăna, memory.  
 Mensa, a table.  
 Mensăra, a measure.  
 Morda, dung.  
 Merga, a pitch-fork.  
 Măclăna, a blackbird.  
 Măclăna, a goal.

- Mētāphōra, a trope.  
 Mica, a crumb.  
 Mītra, a mitre.  
 Mōla, a mill.  
 Mōnēdōla, a jack daw.  
 Mōnēta, money.  
 Mōra, a delay.  
 Muleta, a flie.  
 Mūrēna, a lamprey.  
 Mūria, pickle, brine.  
 Mūsa, a muse.  
 Musea, a fly.  
 Mustēla, a weasel.  
 Myrrha, myrrh.  
 Mýrica, a tamarisk.  
 Mysta, v. -es, m. a priest.  
 Nassa, a net.  
 Nausea, sea sickness.  
 Nauta, m. a mariner.  
 Nitēdōla, a field mouse.  
 Noemia, a funeral song.  
 Norma, a rule.  
 Nōvācūla, a razor.  
 Nōverca, a step-mother.  
 Nympha, a nymph.  
 Ocea, an harrow.  
 Ocrea, a boot.  
 Ōda, v. -e, an ode, or song.  
 Offa, a morsel.  
 Ōlea, an olive.  
 Olla, a pot.  
 Ōra, a coat.  
 Ōrbita, a path.  
 Ōrea, a jar.  
 Orchestra, the stage, or the place next to it, where the nobles sat.  
 Ostrea, an oyster.  
 Pēnūla, a riding-coat.  
 Pāgina, a page.  
 Pāla, a shovel.  
 Pālēstra, a wrestling, or place for it.  
 Pālea, chaff.  
 Pālindōla, a recantation.  
 Palla, a large gown.  
 Palma, the palm.  
 Palpebra, the eye-lid.  
 Pāpilla, the nipple.  
 Pāpūla, a pimple.  
 Parābōla, comparing things together.  
 Parmā, a shield.  
 Parra, a jay.  
 Pātēra, a goblet.  
 Pausa, a stop or pause.  
 Pēdica, a fetter.  
 Pēnūla, a mantle.  
 Pēnūra, want.  
 Pēra, a purse.  
 Perca, a perch.  
 Perfūga, m. a deserter.  
 Pergāmēna, sc. charta, parchment.  
 Perna, a gammon of bacon.  
 Persōna, a mask.  
 Perrica, a peacock.  
 Petra, a rock.  
 Phālarica, a long spear.  
 Phāretta, a quiver.  
 Phāsāna, sc. avis, a pheasant.  
 Phiala, a vital.  
 Phūmāla, a nightingale.  
 Phylīra, the linden tree, a leaf of paper.  
 Phōca, a sea-calf.  
 Pīca, a magpie.  
 Pīla, a ball.  
 Pīla, a pillar.  
 Pincerna m. a butler.  
 Pinna, a fin, a wing.  
 Pīrāta, m. a pirate.  
 Piscina, a fish-pond.  
 Pītuīta, phlegm.  
 Plācenta, a cake.  
 Plāga, a climate.  
 Plāga, a blow.  
 Planta, a plant.  
 Plātēa, or Plātēa, a broad street.  
 Plūma, a feather.  
 Plūvia, rain.  
 Pōdagra, the gout.  
 Poena, a punishment.  
 Poēta, m. a poet.  
 Poetia, a poetess.  
 Pōleuta, malt.  
 Pōstia, postcy.  
 Pompa, a procession.  
 Pōpa, m. a priest who slew the sacrifice.  
 Pōpina, a tavern.  
 Porta, a gate.  
 Præda, plunder.  
 Prærogātia, sc. tribus, v. centuria that voted first.  
 Præcella, a storm.  
 Prōra, the prow.  
 Prōra, prose.  
 Prōsopia, a race.  
 Prutina, hoar frost.  
 Prūna, a burning coal.  
 Psalteria, a music girl.  
 Puella, a girl.  
 Pugna, a battle.  
 Pulpa, the pulp.  
 Pūpūla, the apple of the eye.  
 Purpura, purple.  
 Pustula, a blister.  
 Pyra, a funeral pile.  
 Quadra, & -um, a square.  
 Mābūla, m. a wrangler.  
 Rāna, a frog.  
 Rēpulsā, a refusal.  
 Resina, resin.  
 Rhēda, a chariot.  
 Rima, a chink.  
 Ripa, a bank.  
 Rixa, a scold.  
 Rōsa, a rose.  
 Rōta, a wheel.  
 Rūga, a wrinkle.  
 Ruina, a downfall.  
 Runcina, a saw or plane.  
 Rūta, rue.  
 Sāburra, ballast.  
 Sāga, a sorceress.  
 Sāgīna, cramming.  
 Sāgitta, an arrow.  
 Sālebra, a ragged way.  
 Sāliunē, lavender.  
 Sāliva, spittle.  
 Salpa, stock-fish.  
 Sambūca, an harp or engine of war.  
 Sanctimōnia, devotions.  
 Sandāpila, a dier.  
 Sanna, a staff.  
 Sarcina, a burden.  
 Sārissa, a long spear.  
 Satrāpa, v. -es, m. a Persian governor.  
 Sātīra, a satyr.  
 Scāla, a ladder.  
 Scandūla, a lath to cover houses.  
 Scāpha, a boat.  
 Scāpūla, the shoulder.  
 Scēna, a stage.  
 Schēda, a sheet or scroll.  
 Schōla, a school.  
 Scintilla, a spark.  
 Scitūla, a tart or wafer.  
 Scrofula, the king's evil.  
 Scutra, m. a buffoon.  
 Scutica, a scourge.  
 Scytilla, a kind of serpent, or round staff.  
 Scilībra, half a pound.  
 Scēmōra, half an hour.  
 Sēmīta, a path.  
 Sententia, an opinion.  
 Sentina, a sink.  
 Sēra, a lock.  
 Serra, a saw.  
 Sequibōra, an hour and a half.  
 Sēta, a bristle.  
 Sibylla, a prophetess.  
 Sica, a dagger.  
 Siliqua, an husk.  
 Silva, a wood.  
 Sima, an ape.  
 Simila, flour.  
 Sūtūla, a bucket.  
 Sōcordia, sloth.  
 Sōlea, a shoe.  
 Sōphista, & -es, m. a sophist.  
 Spēcūla, a watch tower.  
 Spēlunca, a cave.  
 Sphæra, a sphere.  
 Spica, an ear of corn.  
 Spina, the back bone.  
 Spira, a wreath.  
 Sponda, a bedstead.  
 Spongia, a sponge.  
 Sponsa, a bride.  
 Sporta, a basket.  
 Spuma, foam.  
 Squāma, a scale.  
 Squilla, a prawn or shrimp.  
 Stātera, a balance.  
 Stātua, a statue.  
 Stella, a star.  
 Stipula, stubble.  
 Stīra, an icicle.  
 Stīra, the plough tail.  
 Stōla, a gown.  
 Strangūria, the making of water with great pain.  
 Strēna, a new year's gift.  
 Strūma, a botch.  
 Stūpa, tow.  
 Subica, a pile.  
 Subūcūla, a shirt.  
 Sūbūla, an awl.  
 Succiūda, a stitch of bacon.  
 Summa, a sum, the whole.  
 Sūperbia, pride.

<i>Sûra</i> , the calf of the leg.	<i>Topstrîna</i> , a barber's shop.	<i>Vappa</i> , palled wine, a spend-thrift.
<i>Sutrina</i> , sc. taberna, a shoe-maker's shop.	<i>Trăgocîia</i> , a tragedy.	<i>Vena</i> , a vein
<i>Sûtîra</i> , a seam.	<i>Trăgîla</i> , a javelin with a barbed head.	<i>Vênă</i> , leave
<i>Sycôphanta</i> , m. a sharper.	<i>Trahca</i> , a sledge or dray	<i>Verna</i> m. an homeborn slave.
<i>Syllăba</i> , a syllable.	<i>Trăma</i> , the wool	<i>Verrûca</i> , a wart
<i>Symbôla</i> , a club, a share of a reckoning.	<i>Trocolea</i> , a pulley	<i>Vêsica</i> , the bladder
<i>Symphônia</i> , harmony.	<i>Trulla</i> , a trowel	<i>Vespa</i> , a wasp
<i>Syngrăpha</i> , a bill or band.	<i>Trătina</i> , a balance	<i>Via</i> , a way
<i>Tăberna</i> , a shop.	<i>Tăba</i> , a trumpet	<i>Vicia</i> , a catch or tare
<i>Tăbula</i> , a table.	<i>Tănica</i> , a waistcoat	<i>Victima</i> , a victim
<i>Teda</i> , a torch.	<i>Tucba</i> , a crowd	<i>Victôria</i> , a conquest
<i>Tenia</i> , a ribbon.	<i>Turma</i> , a troop	<i>Villa</i> , a country seat
<i>Techna</i> , a trick or wile.	<i>Ulna</i> , an ell	<i>Vindemia</i> , vintage
<i>Tegula</i> , a tile.	<i>Ușula</i> , an owl	<i>Vindieta</i> , vengeance; a rod laid on the head of slaves when freed
<i>Teha</i> , a web.	<i>Ulva</i> , sedge	<i>Viola</i> , a violet
<i>Tēbreia</i> , a tumble.	<i>Umbra</i> , a shade	<i>Vipera</i> , a viper
<i>Terra</i> , the earth.	<i>Unda</i> , a wave	<i>Virga</i> , a rod
<i>Tessera</i> , a dye.	<i>Ungula</i> , a nail, the hoof	<i>Vita</i> , life
<i>Testa</i> , an earthen pot.	<i>Upupa</i> , the houppou, a bird	<i>Vitta</i> , a fillet
<i>Textrina</i> , a weaver's shop.	<i>Urina</i> , urine	<i>Viverra</i> , a ferret
<i>Theca</i> , a case.	<i>Urna</i> , an urn	<i>Vola</i> , the palm of the hand
<i>Tibia</i> , a pipe, the leg.	<i>Urtica</i> , a nettle	<i>Zona</i> , a girdle, a zone
<i>Tilia</i> , the linden tree.	<i>Ūva</i> , a grape	
<i>Tinea</i> , a moth.	<i>Vacca</i> , a cow	
	<i>Văgina</i> , a scabbard	

## EXCEPTIONS.

Exo. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cômēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha* the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *ai*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulai*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fămilia* usually retain; as, *măter-fămiliās*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris familiās*; nom. plur. *matres-familiās*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

<i>Ānīma</i> , the soul, the life	<i>Fīlia</i> , or <i>Nāta</i> , a daughter
<i>Dea</i> , a goddess	<i>Līberta</i> , a freed woman
<i>Equa</i> , a mare	<i>Mūla</i> , a she-mule
<i>Fămīla</i> , a female servant	

Thus, *deabus*, *filiabus*, rather than *filis*, &c.

## GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *is* of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *is* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ēnēas*, *Ēneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Ēnēæ*; dat. *-æ*; acc. *-am* or *an*; voc. *-a*; abl. *â*. So *Bōreas*, *-ea*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as, *Ossa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.



Nouns in *es*, and *e* are thus declined :

Anchorises, *Anchorises*, the name of a man.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* Anchorises, *Acc.* Anchorisen,

*Gen.* Anchorisæ, *Voc.* Anchorise,

*Dat.* Anchorisæ, *Abl.* Anchorise.

Pênêlôpe, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* Pênêlôpe, *Acc.* Penelopen,

*Gen.* Penelopes, *Voc.* Penelope,

*Dat.* Penelope, *Abl.* Penelope.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a* ; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides* ; *Persa* for *Perses*, a Persian ; *Geōmetra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician ; *Circa*, for *Circa* ; *Epiōma*, for *-me*, an abridgment ; *Grammâtica*, for *-ce*, grammar ; *Rhêtôrēca*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

*Note.* We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted ; as, *Cœlicolām*, for *Cœlicolorum* ; *Æneidām*, for *-arum*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um* ; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter ; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i* ; the dat. and abl. in *o* ; the acc. in *um* ; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e* :) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a* ; the gen. in *orum* ; the dat. and abl. in *is* ; and the acc. in *os*, or *a* ; as,

Gēner, a son-in-law, masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Terminations.
<i>Nom.</i> gēner,	<i>Nom.</i> gēnēri,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>i</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> genēri,	<i>Gen.</i> generōrum,	<i>i</i> , <i>orum</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i> genero,	<i>Dat.</i> generis,	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i> generum,	<i>Acc.</i> generos,	<i>um</i> , <i>os</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i> gener,	<i>Voc.</i> genēri,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i> genero.	<i>Abl.</i> generis.	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> .

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law ; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy : So *Furcifer*, a villain ; *Lucifer*, the morning star ; *adulter*, an adulterer ; *armiger*, an armour-bearer ; *presbyter*, an elder ; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan ; *vesper*

which dead bodies were in-  
closed  
Sātyrus, a satyr, a kind of  
devil  
Scālus, a boat; a piece of  
wood where the oars hung  
Scāpus, a stalk, a shaft or  
shank  
Scārus, the scar, a fish  
Scāpus, a rush  
Scārus, a squirrel  
Scāpulus, a rock  
Scāpus, a mark  
Scāpulus, a doubt or scruple  
Scāpus, a little stone  
Scāpus, a bowl  
Servus, a slave  
Sesterius, two pounds and a  
half, a sesterce; a Roman  
coin  
Sicarius, an assassin  
Simius, &c., an ape  
Strius, the dog-star  
Soccus, a kind of shoe  
Somnus, sleep  
Sonus, a sound  
Spārus, a spear  
Sponsus, a bridegroom  
Stimulus, a sting, a spur

Stomachus, the stomach  
Strāpus, a thong, a strap  
Stylus, a style, or iron pen  
to write with on waxen  
tables  
Stūculus, a swine-herd  
Succus, juice  
Suleus, a furrow  
Surdulus, a young twig  
Sūsurus, a whisper  
Tālus, the ankle, a die  
Taurus, a bull  
Taxus, f. the yew-tree  
Terminus, a bound  
Thālamus, a marriage bed-  
chamber  
Thēologus, a divine  
Thēsauros, a treasure  
Thōlus, the roof of a temple  
Thronus, a royal seat  
Thyāsus, a chorus in ho-  
nour of Bacchus  
Thyrus, a spear wrapt  
with troy  
Titulus, a title  
Tōmus, a volume  
Tōnus, a note in mus'c  
Tōphus, a gravel-stone  
Tornus, a turner's wheel

Tōrus, a couch  
Tribulus, a chestle  
Triumphus, a triumph  
Trōchus, a top  
Truncus, the trunk  
Tūbus, a tube or pipe  
Tūmulus, a hillock  
Turdus, a thrush  
Tyranus, a tyrant  
Typus, a figure or type  
Ulmus, f. an elm-tree  
Umbilicus, the navel  
Uncus, a hook  
Urceus, a pitcher  
Ursus, a bear  
Urus, a buffalo  
Uterus, the womb  
Vallus, a stake  
Venēficus, a sorcerer  
Ventus, the wind  
Vicus, a village, a street  
Villēus, &c., an overseer of  
a farm  
Villus, shaggy hair  
Vitellus, the yolk of an egg  
Viricus, a step-father  
Villulus, a calf  
Zēphyrus, the west wind

Regnum, a kingdom neut.  
Sing.

Nom. regnum,  
Gen. regni,  
Dat. regno,  
Acc. regnum,  
Voc. regnum,  
Abl. regno.

Plur.

Nom. regna,  
Gen. regnōrum,  
Dat. regnis,  
Acc. regna,  
Voc. regna,  
Abl. regnis.

In like manner decline,

Acētum, vinegar  
Acēbitum, wolf's bane, a  
poisonous plant  
Adāgium, a proverb  
Adminicūlum, a prop  
Adytum, the most secret  
part of a temple  
Album, a register  
Allium, garlick  
Amentum, a thong  
Amūletum, a charm  
Anethum, anise  
Anticum, a fore-door  
Antrum, a cave  
Aplum, paralysis  
Argentum, silver  
Armentum, an herd  
Arrum, &c., a field  
Astrum, a star  
Asylum, a sanctuary  
Atrium, a court or hall  
Auleum, tapestry  
Aurum, gold  
Auxilium, assistance  
Xivarium, a cage  
Balsamum, balm  
Bāthrum, an abyss  
Bāsum, a kiss  
Bellum, war  
Bēsum, two days

Biennium, two years  
Brāchium, an arm  
Brūtrum, butter  
Caelum, a graving tool  
Cementum, materials for  
building  
Cānistrum, a basket  
Cāpistrum, a halter or mis-  
zle  
Castrum, a castle  
Centrum, the centre  
Cērebrum, the brain  
Chirogrāphum, a handwrit-  
ing  
Ciliū, the eye-lashes  
Citrum, citron-wood  
Clasium, a trumpet  
Caelum, pl. f. heaven  
Cōmum, mire, dirt  
Collōquium, a conference  
Collum, the neck  
Commodum, advantage  
Confinium, a bound or li-  
mit  
Congitium, a largeess  
Conviciū, a reproach  
Cōrium, a hide  
Costum, spikenard  
Crēmum, a dry stick  
Crēpusculum, the twilight

Cribrum, a sieve  
Cubiculum, a bed-chamber  
Cumīnum, cummin, an herb  
Cymbalum, a cymbal  
Damnum, loss  
Dēlūbrum, a temple  
Dēmensum, an allowance  
of meat  
Detrimentum, damage  
Diarium, a day's wages  
Dilūculum, the dawning of  
day  
Dium, poet. the open air  
Dōlūm, a cask  
Dōmōlium, an abode  
Dōnum, a gift  
Dorūm, the back  
Effūgium, an escape  
Electrum, amber  
Elēmentum, an element, a  
letter  
Elōgium, a brief saying, a tes-  
timonial in one's praise  
Emblūmentum, preft  
Emplastrum, a plaster  
Empōrium, a mart or mar-  
ket town  
Epiphium, a saddle  
Epitaphium, an inscription  
on a tomb

Exanātilum, a work house.	Mānubrium, a hilt or handle.	Pōmum, an apple.
Evuā, vessels.	Matrimōnium, marriage.	Posteum, a back door
Fasēdum, a chariot.	Mausoleum, any sumptuous monument.	Postillmūm, a return to one's own country
Everrēdum, a drag-net.	Membrum, a member.	Prædium, a farm
Exemplum, an example.	Mendacium, a lie.	Præjudicium, a forejudging
Exilium, destruction.	Mentem, the chin.	Prælium, a battle
Exordium, a beginning.	Mētallum, metal, a mine.	Premium, a reward
Fānum, a temple.	Mīllium, millet, a kind of grain.	Præsidium, a defence, a garrison
Fascinum, witchcraft.	Mīnium, vermilion.	Prandium, a dinner
Fasīgium, the top.	Mōmentum, weight, importance.	Pratum, a meadow
Ferculum, a dish of meat.	Mōnōpōlium, the sole right of selling any thing.	Prælium, a press
Ferrum, iron.	Monstrum, a monster, any thing against the common course of nature.	Prælium, a price
Filum, a thread.	Morikium, a mortar.	Primordium, } a beginning
Flābellum, a fan.	Mūsæum, a study or library.	Principium, } a beginning
Flagrum & flagellum, a whip.	Mustum, new wine.	Privilegium, a private law or special right
Flammæum, a veil.	Mysterium, a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.	Probrum, a disgrace
Fœnum, hay.	Nasturtium, cresses.	Prodigium, a prodigy, any thing praternatural
Fōllum, a leaf.	Naulum, freight.	Prœmissum, a promise
Fōrum, a market place.	Naufrāgium, shipwreck.	Prœpōsitum, purpose
Frāgum, a strawberry.	Nēgōtium, a thing, business.	Prœpugnaculum, a bul-wark
Frætum, a narrow sea.	Nitrum, nitre.	Prœverbium, an old saying
Frumentum, corn.	Obsequium, compliance.	Pulplum, a pulpit
Frustrum, a bit or piece.	Odium, hatred.	Ramentum, a chip or shaving
Fulerum, a prop.	Omārum, the paunch.	Rastrum, a rake
Furtum, theft.	Omentum, the caul or skin which covers the bowels.	Rēfugium, a shelter
Grānarium, a granary.	Oppidum, a town.	Rēmēdum, a cure
Grānum, a grain.	Opprobrium, a reproach.	Rēmuleum, a tow-boat
Grāphium, a pencil.	Opsōnium, fish, or any thing eaten with bread.	Rēpugulum, a bar
Grēmium, the bosom.	Orgānum, any instrument.	Rēpudium, a divorce
Gymnāsium, a place of exercise.	Oculum, a kiss; pl. the lips.	Responsum, an answer
Gynæcæum, the woman's apartment.	Ostrum, purple.	Rētinaculum, a cable
Gypsum, plaster.	Otium, repose.	Rostrum, the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship
Haustum, a bucket.	Ostium, the door.	Rōdimentum, pl. -a, the first principles of any art
Hellēbōrum, & -us, hellebore, a plant.	Ovum, an egg.	Rastrum, a pick-axe
Hōrōlōgium, any thing that tells the hours.	Pābulum, fodder.	Sabbatum, the sabbath
Idōlum, an image.	Pactum, an agreement.	Sābūlum, gravel
Idyllium, a pastoral poem.	Pālātium, a palace.	Saccharum, sugar
Impērium, command.	Pālātum, the palate.	Sācellum, a chapel
Inceptum, an enterprise.	Pallium, a cloak.	Sācerdotium, the priest-hood
Indicium, a discovery.	Pālūdamentum, a general's robe.	Sacrāmentum, a military oath
Indusium, a shirt.	Pānarium, a bread-basket.	Sacrificium, a sacrifice
Ingenium, wit, genius.	Pāribulum, a gibbet.	Sacrilegium, stealing sacred things
Initium, a beginning.	Pensum, a task.	Sāgum, soldier's cloak
Intervallum, distance between.	Peplum, a woman's robe.	Sālarium, a salary
Jūdicium, judgment.	Perjūrium, perjury, taking a false oath.	Sālīnum, a salt-cellar
Jūgulum, the throat.	Perpendiculum, a straight line upwards or downwards.	Sālimentum, salt meat
Jūgum, a yoke, the ridge of a hill.	Pētorium, a waggon.	Salum, the sea
Jurgium, a quarrel.	Pileatum, a chariot.	Sandallum, a slipper
Jussum, an order.	Pilum, a javelin.	Sarcolum, a wedding-hook, a spade
Justitium, a vacation.	Pistillum, the pestle of a mortar.	Sarmentum, a twig
Lābium, the lip.	Placum, peace.	Sāctidūm, a bond of security
Lardum, bacon.	Plastrum, a waggon.	Saxum, a large stone
Lāsānum, a chamber-pot.	Plectrum, a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.	Scalprum, dim. Scalpellum, a knife
Lībāum, a sweet cake.	Plumbum, lead.	Scamnum, dim. Sombellum, a bench or form
Līcium, the wool.	Pōmārium, an orchard.	Sceptrum, a sceptre, a scepter
Līguum, wood.	Pōmērium, a void space on each side of a town wall.	Scitum, a decree
Līkum, a lily.		Scortum, an harlot
Līntum, a sheet.		Serinium, a coffee
Līnum, lint.		Seriptum, a writing
Lōrum, a thong.		
Lucrum, gain.		
Lūdibrium, a laughing-stock.		
Lustrum, a survey.		
Lūteum, the yolk of an egg.		
Lūtum, clay.		
Macellum, the shambles.		

<b>Serāpūlum</b> , a <i>scruple</i> , a certain weight	<b>Stannum</b> , tin	<b>Tirdeſinium</b> , an apprenticeship
<b>Serūtum</b> , a shield	<b>Sterquilinium</b> , a dung-hill	<b>Tormentum</b> , an engine, a torment
<b>Sŕcūlum</b> , an age	<b>Stipendium</b> , pay	<b>Toxicum</b> , poison
<b>Sēmīnārium</b> , a nursery	<b>Strāgūlum</b> , a blanket	<b>Tribitum</b> , tax, or custom
<b>Sŕnācūlum</b> , a senate-house	<b>Strātum</b> , a couch	<b>Triellinium</b> , a dining-room
<b>Sŕnātās consultum</b> , a decree of the senate	<b>Strigmentum</b> , a scraping	<b>Triulium</b> , three days
<b>Sŕrloum</b> , silk	<b>Stūdium</b> , desire, study	<b>Triennium</b> , three years
<b>Servitium</b> , slavery	<b>Stuprum</b> , debauchery	<b>Tripodium</b> , a dancing
<b>Serpyllum</b> , wild thyme	<b>Suāvium</b> , a kiss	<b>Trivium</b> , a place where three ways meet
<b>Sertum</b> , a garland	<b>Subsellium</b> , a bench	<b>Tropaeum</b> , a trophy, a token of victory
<b>Sŕrum</b> , whey	<b>Subsidium</b> , help	<b>Tugūrium</b> , a cottage
<b>Serteritium</b> , a thousand serteris	<b>Sūburbanum</b> , a house near the town	<b>Tympnūm</b> , a drum
<b>Sŕvum</b> , yellow	<b>Sūdūrbium</b> , the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls	<b>Vaccinium</b> , a berry
<b>Signum</b> , a sign, a standard	<b>Sūdūrium</b> , a handkerchief	<b>Vādīmōnium</b> , bail; a promise to appear in court
<b>Sigillum</b> , a seal	<b>Suffrāgium</b> , a vote	<b>Vādum</b> , a ford, the sea
<b>Silicernium</b> , a funeral supper, an old man	<b>Suggestum</b> , & -us, -ūs, a place raised above others	<b>Vallum</b> , a rampart
<b>Sinum</b> , a milk-pail	<b>Summārium</b> , an abridgment	<b>Vellum</b> , a veil, a sail
<b>Sistrum</b> , a timbrel	<b>Superciliūm</b> , the brow, pride	<b>Venābūlum</b> , a hunting pole
<b>Sōdālitiūm</b> , a company, a corporation	<b>Suspīrium</b> , a sigh	<b>Vēnēnum</b> , poison
<b>Sōlārium</b> , a sun-dial	<b>Symbōlum</b> , a sign or token	<b>Ventilabrum</b> , a fan
<b>Sōlātiūm</b> , comfort	<b>Sympōsium</b> , & -on, a banquet	<b>Verbum</b> , a word
<b>Sōlium</b> , a throne	<b>Tabernācūlum</b> , a tent	<b>Vestibūlum</b> , a porch
<b>Sōlum</b> , the ground	<b>Tābūlatum</b> , a story	<b>Vestigium</b> , the print of the foot
<b>Somnium</b> , a dream	<b>Tābum</b> , black gore	<b>Vexillum</b> , a banner
<b>Spātium</b> , a space	<b>Tædium</b> , weariness	<b>Vīlētum</b> , money, or provisions for a journey
<b>Spectācūlum</b> , a show	<b>Talentum</b> , a talent	<b>Vineūlum</b> , a chain
<b>Spectrum</b> , a phantom, or apparition	<b>Tectum</b> , the roof, a house	<b>Vinum</b> , wine
<b>Spēcūlum</b> , a looking-glass	<b>Tēlum</b> , a weapon	<b>Vitium</b> , vice, a fault
<b>Spēlūm</b> , a den	<b>Templum</b> , a church	<b>Vitrum</b> , glass
<b>Spēlīgūm</b> , a gleaming	<b>Tergum</b> , the back	<b>Vivārium</b> , a place to keep beasts in, a warren or fish pond
<b>Spēculum</b> , a dart	<b>Tenīmōnium</b> , an evidence	<b>Vōcābūlum</b> , a name or word
<b>Spīrācūlum</b> , a breathing hole	<b>Theatrum</b> , a theatre	<b>Votum</b> , a vow
<b>Spōlium</b> , spoil	<b>Thūribūlum</b> , a censer, a vessel to burn incense in	
<b>Spūm</b> , spittle	<b>Tinnūbūlum</b> , a little bell	
<b>Stābūlum</b> , a stable		
<b>Stādium</b> , a furlong		
<b>Stagnum</b> , a pond		

## EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *hūmūs*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*;

<b>Abyssus</b> , a bottomless pit	<b>Diālectus</b> , a dialect or manner of speech	<b>Mēthōsus</b> , a method
<b>Antidōtus</b> , a preservative against poison	<b>Diāmetros</b> , the diameter of a circle	<b>Pērīōdus</b> , a period
<b>Arctos</b> , the Bear, a constellation near the north pole	<b>Diphthongus</b> , a diphthong	<b>Pērīmetros</b> , the circumference
<b>Carbōsus</b> , a coal	<b>Erēmus</b> , a desert	<b>Phārus</b> , a watch-tower
		<b>Synōdus</b> , an assembly

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

<b>Amēthystus</b> , an amethyst	<b>Sapphirus</b> , a sapphire	<b>Byssus</b> , fine flax or linen
<b>Chrysolithus</b> , a chrysolite	<b>Tōpazius</b> , a topaz	<b>Corrus</b> , cornary
<b>Chrysōphrāsus</b> , a kind of topaz	<b>Biblus</b> , { an Egyptian reed	<b>Crōcus</b> , saffron
<b>Crystallus</b> , crystal	<b>Pāpyrus</b> , { of which paper was made	<b>Hysōpus</b> , hyssop
<b>Leucōchrysus</b> , a jacinth		<b>Nardus</b> , spikenard

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Beryllus*, the beryl; *Carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pyropus*, a ruby; *Smaragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as, *Asparagus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass; *ellebōrus*, elle-

bore; *raphānus*, radish or colewort; *intjbus*, endive, or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

*Atērus*, an atom.  
*Balānus*, the fruit of the palm-tree, oil-press.

*Barbitus*, a harp.  
*Cāmēlus*, a camel.  
*Cōlus*, a distaff.

*Grossus*, a green fig.  
*Pēnus*, a store-house.  
*Phāsēlus*, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus* poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

### EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hōrātius*, *Hōrāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son also hath *fili*; *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tabellārius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthe*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *stultus*, *Latinus*, for *stulte*, *Latine*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Auditus*, *pōpūlus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv. 1. 24.

The poets also change nouns *er* unto *us*; as, *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evander*, or *Evandre*. So *Leander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puēre*, from *puērus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *il*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūri*, for *tugurii*; *ingēni* for *ingenii*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deām*, *libērām*, *sabrām*, *duāmōirām*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrām*, *Graīām*, *Argivām*, *Dānāām*, *Pēlāgām*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

### GREEK NOUNS.

*Os* and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *īlion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *īlium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *es* or *us* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphēus*, genitive *Orphēi*, *Orphēi*, or *Orphēi*. So *Thēsēus*, *Promēthēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *us* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeos* or *ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodori*, &c.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, genitive plural *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirty, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eig<sup>t</sup>

peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r* with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A, i, and y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a, e, &c.*; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e, or i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es, a, or ia*; gen. *um, or tum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

*Sermo, speech, masc.*

*Caput, the head, neut.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. sermo.	N. sermones,
G. sermonis,	G. sermonum.
D. sermoni,	D. sermonibus,
A. sermonem,	A. sermones,
V. sermo,	V. sermones,
A. sermone.	A. sermonibus,

*Rupes, a rock fem.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. rupes,	N. rupes,
G. rupis,	G. rupium,
D. rupi,	D. rupibus,
A. rupem,	A. rupes,
V. rupes,	V. rupes,
A. rupe,	A. rupibus.

*Lāpis, a stone, masc.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. lāpis,	N. lāpides,
G. lapidis.	G. lapidum,
D. lapidi,	D. lapidibus,
A. lapidem,	A. lapides,
V. lapis,	V. lapides,
A. lapide,	A. lapidibus.

Sing.	Plur.
N. caput,	N. capita.
G. capit.	G. capitum,
D. capiti,	D. capitibus,
A. caput,	A. capita,
V. caput,	V. capita,
A. capite.	A. capitibus.

*Sedile, a seat, neut.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. sedile,	N. sedilia,
G. sedilis,	G. sedilium,
D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. sedile,	V. sedilia,
A. sedili,	A. sedilibus.

*Iter, a journey, neut.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. iter,	N. itinera,
G. itineris,	G. itinerum,
D. itineri,	D. itineribus,
A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. iter,	V. itinera,
A. itinere,	A. itineribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

*A, E, I, and Y.*

## 1. Nouns in *a, e, i, and y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma, diademātis*, a crown; *dogma-ātis*, an opinion. So,

Enigma, a riddle.	Nūmisma, a coin.	Stigma, a mark or brand,
Apōthegma, a short pithy saying.	Phasma, an apparition.	a disgrace.
Arōma, sweet spices.	Poēma, a poem.	Stratāgēma, an artful contrivance.
Axiōma, a plain truth.	Schēma, a scheme or figure.	Thēma, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.
Diplōma, a charter.	Sōphisma, a deceitful argument.	Tōreuma, a carved vessel.
Epigramma, an inscription	Stemma, a pedigree.	

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte, retis*, a net. So,

Antle, a shield.	Equle, a stable for horses.	Ūvile, a sheep-fold.
Aplustre, the flag of a ship.	Lāqueāre, a celled roof.	Præsēpe, a stall; a bee-hive.
Campestre, a pair of drawers.	Mantle, a towel.	Sēcāle, rye.
Cochleāre, a spoon.	Mōnile, a necklace.	Suile, a sow-cote.
Conclāve, a room.	Nāvāle, a dock or place for shipping.	Tibiāle, a stocking.
Crināle, a pin for the hair.		
Cūbule, a couch.		

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi, gum*; *zingibēri, ginger*; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydrōmēli, hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly, molyos*, an herb; *mysy, -yos*, vitriol.

## O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *onis* ; as,

*Sermo*, *sermōnis*, speech ; *draco*, *dracōnis*, a dragon. So,

*Agro*, a horse-keeper  
*Aquilo*, the north wind  
*Arrhābo*, an earnest-penny,  
 a pledge  
*Bālātro*, a pitiful fellow  
*Bambāllo*, a flatterer  
*Bāro*, a blockhead  
*Būbo*, an owl  
*Būfo*, a toad  
*Cālo*, a soldier's slave  
*Cāpo*, a capon  
*Carbo*, a coal  
*Caupo*, an innkeeper  
*Cerbu*, a cobbler, or one who  
 follows a mean trade  
*Ciniflo*, a friser of hair  
*Crabro*, a wasp or hornet  
*Curio*, the chief of a ward  
 or curia

*Equilo*, a groom or hostler  
*Ero*, a wanderer  
*Fullo*, a fuller of cloth  
*Helluo*, a glutton  
*Histrio*, a player  
*Latro*, a robber  
*Lēno*, a pimp  
*Lūlio*, & -ius, a player  
*Lureo*, a glutton  
*Mango*, a slave merchant  
*Mīrmillo*, a fencer  
*Mōrio*, a fool  
*Muero*, the point of a wea-  
 pon  
*Mulio*, a muleteer  
*Nēbulo*, a knave  
*Pāvo*, a peacock  
*Pēro*, a kind of shoe

*Præco*, a common crier  
*Prædo*, a robber  
*Pulmo*, the lungs  
*Pūlio*, a little child  
*Salmo*, a salmon  
*Sannio*, a buffoon  
*Sāpo*, soap  
*Sīpho*, a pipe or tube  
*Spādo*, an eunuch  
*Stōlo*, a sheet or scian  
*Strābo*, a goggle-eyed person  
*Tēmo*, the pole or draught-  
 tree  
*Tiro*, a raw soldier  
*Umbo*, the boss of a shield  
*Upīlo*, a shepherd  
*Vōlo*, a volunteer

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body ; as *rātio*, *ratiōnis*, reason. So.

*Captio*, a quirk  
*Cautio*, caution, care  
*Coneio*, an assembly, a  
 speech  
*Cessio*, a yielding  
*Dictio*, a word  
*Dēditio*, a surrender  
*Leccio*, a lesson  
*Lēgio*, a legion, a body of men  
*Mentio*, mention  
*Nōtio*, a notion or idea  
*Opīnio*, an opinion  
*Optio*, a choice  
*Orātio*, a speech  
*Pensio*, a payment

*Perduellio*, treason  
*Portio*, a part  
*Pōtio*, drink  
*Prōditio*, treachery  
*Proscriptio*, a proscription,  
 ordering citizens to be  
 slain and confiscating  
 their effects  
*Quēstio*, an enquiry  
*Rēbellio*, rebellion  
*Regio*, a country  
*Rēlatio*, a telling  
*Rēligio*, religion  
*Rēmīssio*, a slackening

*Sanctio*, a confirmation  
*Sectio*, the confiscation or  
 forfeiture of one's goods  
*Sēditio*, a mutiny  
*Sēmio*, a sitting  
*Statio*, a station  
*Suspensio*, mistrust  
*Tūllitatio*, a tickling  
*Translatio*, a transferring  
*Usucapio*, the enjoyment of  
 a thing by prescription  
*Vacatio*, freedom from la-  
 bour, &c.  
*Visio*, an apparition

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine ; as,

*Curetilio*, the throat pipe,  
 the weathervane  
*Pāpilio*, a butterfly  
*Pūgio*, a dagger  
*Pūlio*, a little child

*Setpio*, a staff  
*Scorpio*, a scorpion  
*Septentio*, the north  
*Stellio*, a lizard  
*Titio*, a firebrand

*Unio*, a pearl  
*Vesperilio*, a bat  
*Ternio*, the number three  
*Quaternio*, — four  
*Senio*, — six

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis* ; as, *ārundo*, *arundinis*, a reed ; *imāgo*, *imaginis*, an image. So,

*Arūgo*, rust (of brass)  
*Cāligo*, darkness  
*Cartilāgo*, a gristle  
*Crēpido*, a creek, a bank  
*Farrāgo*, a mixture  
*Ferrūgo*, rust (of iron)  
*Formīdo*, fear  
*Fūligo*, soot  
*Grandū*, hail  
*Hirūdo*, a horse-leech

*Hirundo*, a swallow  
*Interceptio*, a space be-  
 tween  
*Lānāgo*, down  
*Lentigo*, a pimple  
*Origo*, an origin  
*Porrigō*, scurf, or scales in  
 the head ; dandruff  
*Prōpāgo*, a lineage  
*Rūbigo*, rust, mildew

*Sartāgo*, a frying-pan  
*Scātūrigō*, a spring  
*Testūdo*, a tortoise  
*Torpēdo*, a numbness  
*Uligō*, the natural moisture  
 of the earth  
*Vāletūdo*, health  
*Vertigo*, a dizziness  
*Virgo*, a virgin  
*Vōrāgo*, a gulf

But the following are masculine ;

*Cardo*, -inis, a hinge  
*Cūdo*, -inis, a leather cap  
*Harpāgo*, -inis, a drag  
*Līgo*, -inis, a spade

*Margo*, -inis, the brink of a river ; also f  
*Ordo*, -inis, order  
*Tendo*, -inis, a tendon  
*Vēdo*, -inis, a linen or woollen sock

*Cūpido*, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 4. The following nouns have *inis* :

<i>Apollō</i> , -inis, the god <i>Apollo</i>	<i>Nēmo</i> , -inis, m. or f. no body
<i>Hōmo</i> , -inis, a man or woman	<i>Turbo</i> , -inis, m. a whirlwind
<i>Cōrō</i> , flesh, fem. has <i>carnis</i> .	<i>Arīs</i> , masc. the name of a river, <i>Aniēnis</i> . <i>Neris</i> , <i>Nerēnis</i> , the wife of the god <i>Mars</i> ; from the obsolete nominatives, <i>Anien</i> , <i>Nerien</i> .

*Turbo*, the name of a man, has *inis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman: genit. *Didās*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didō-nis*; so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship: *hālo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

### C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

*anīmal*, *anīmālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

<i>Cervīcal</i> , a bolster	<i>Mīnerval</i> , entry-money	<i>Pūtēal</i> , a well-cover
<i>Cūbital</i> , a cushion	<i>Mīnūtal</i> , minced meat	<i>Veetlgal</i> , a tax
Except,	<i>Consul</i> , -ūs, m. a consul	<i>Mūgil</i> , -ilis, m. a mullet-fish
	<i>Fel</i> , <i>fellis</i> , n. gall	<i>Sāl</i> , <i>sālis</i> , m. or n. salt
	<i>Lac</i> , <i>lactis</i> , n. milk	<i>Sāles</i> , -ium, pl. m. witty sayings
	<i>Mel</i> , <i>mellis</i> , n. honey	<i>Sol</i> , <i>sōlis</i> , m. the sun

*D* is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davīdis*.

### N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

<i>Cānon</i> , -ōnis, a rule	<i>Lien</i> , <i>Enis</i> , the mill	<i>Ren</i> , <i>rēnis</i> , the reins
<i>Daemon</i> , -ōnis, a spirit	<i>Paeon</i> , -ānis, a song	<i>Splen</i> , -ēnis, the spleen
<i>Delphin</i> , -inis, a dolphin	<i>Physiognōmon</i> , -ōnis, one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face	<i>Syren</i> , -ēnis, f. a Syren
<i>Cōnōmon</i> , -ōnis, the cock of a dial		<i>Titan</i> , -ānis, the sun
<i>Hymen</i> , <i>ēnis</i> , the god of marriage		

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as, *flūmen*, *flūmēnis*, a river. So,

<i>Abdōmen</i> , the paunch	<i>Diserīnen</i> , a difference	<i>Pūtāmen</i> , a nut-shell
<i>Acūmen</i> , sharpness	<i>Exūmen</i> , a swarm of bees	<i>Sagmen</i> , vervain, an herb
<i>Agmen</i> , an army on march	<i>Fōrāmen</i> , a hole	<i>Sēmen</i> , a seed
<i>Alūmen</i> , alum	<i>Gerūmen</i> , a sprout	<i>Spēcīnen</i> , a proof
<i>Blūtūmen</i> , a kind of clay	<i>Grānen</i> , grass	<i>Sūknen</i> , the warp
<i>Cēdūmen</i> , the top	<i>Lēgūmen</i> , all kinds of pulse	<i>Subtēmen</i> , the roof
<i>Carmen</i> , a song, a poem	<i>Lūmen</i> , light	<i>Tegūmen</i> , a covering
<i>Cognōmen</i> , a sir-name	<i>Nōmen</i> , a name	<i>Vīmēn</i> , a twig
<i>Cōlūmen</i> , a support	<i>Nūmen</i> , the Delty	<i>Vōlūmen</i> , a folding
<i>Crīmen</i> , a crime	<i>Omen</i> , a presage	

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

<i>Glūten</i> , -inis, glue	<i>Inguen</i> , -inis, the groin
<i>Unguēn</i> , -inis, ointment	<i>Pollen</i> , -inis, fine flour

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *pecten*, a comb; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter; *tībīcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, v. *oscēnis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.



Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *ædon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *halcyon*, ōnis, a bird called the king's fisher ; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chamæleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

### AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

*Calcar*, *calcāris*, a spur ; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noise. So,

Guttur, -ūris, the throat.

Jūbar, āris, a sun beam.

Lācunar, -āris, a ceiling.

Except, Ebūr, -ōris, n. ivory.

Far, farris, n. corn.

Fēmūr, -ōris, n. the thigh.

Furfur, -ūris, m. bran.

Fur, fūris, m. a thief.

Hēpar, -ātis, or -ātos, n. the liver.

Nectar, -āris, drink of the gods.

Pulvinar, -āris, a pillow.

Sulphur, -ūris, sulphur.

Jēcur, -ōris, or jecūōris, n. the liver.

Rēbur, -ōris, n. strength.

Sālar, -āris, m. a trout.

Turtur, -ūris, m. a turtle-dove.

Vultur, -ūris, m. a vulture.

### ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

*Anser*, *ansēris*, a goose, or gander ; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart ; *āer*, -ēris, the air ; *carcer*, -ēris, a prison ; *asser*, -ēris, & *assis*, -is, a plank ; *dōlor*, -ōris, pain ; *cōlor*, -ōris, a colour. So,

Actor, a doer, a pleader.

Crēditor, he that trusts or lends.

Crur, gore.

Dēbitor, a debtor.

Fātor, an ill smell.

Hōnor, honour.

Lector, a reader.

Lictor, an officer among the

Romanē, who attended

the magistrates.

Livor, paleness, malice.

Nidor, a strong smell.

Rhētor, a rhetorician, has *rhetōris* ; *castor*, a beaver, -ōris.

Ōdor, & -os, a smell.

Ōlor, a swan.

Pædor, filth.

Pastor, a shepherd.

Prætor, a commander.

Pūdor, shame.

Rūbor, blushing.

Rūmor, a report.

Sāpor, a taste.

Sartor, a cobbler or tailor.

Sātor, a sower, a father.

Sūpor, sleep.

Splendor, brightness.

Sponsor, a surety.

Squālor, filthiness.

Sūpor, dulness.

Sūtōr, a sewer.

Tēpor, warmth.

Terror, dread.

Tīmor, fear.

Tonsor, a barber.

Tūtōr, a guardian.

Vāpor, a vapour.

Vēnātor, a hunter.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Æcer, -ēris, a maple-tree.

Ædor, -ōris, fine wheat

Æquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.

Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcass.

Cleer, -ēris, vetches.

Cor, cordis, the heart.

Iter, itinēris, a journey.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, is fem.

Marmor, -ōris, marble.

Pāpāver, -ēris, poppy.

Pīper, -ēris, pepper.

Spinther, -ēris, a clasp.

Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.

Ūber, -ēris, a pap, or fatness.

Ver, vēris, the spring.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive ; as, *hic imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber*, *Octōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris* ; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly ; *pāter*, *patris*, a father ; *frāter*, -tris, a brother ; *accipiter*, -tris, a hawk ; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris* ; *sōter*, -ēris, a saviour.

a saviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jovis*; *linter*, -*tris*, a little boat, is *inass*. or *fem*.

## AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *atis* *as*, *ætas*, *ætatis*, an age. So,

<i>Estas</i> , the summer.	<i>Sīmultas</i> , a feud, a grudge.	<i>Vērītas</i> , truth.
<i>Pīetas</i> , piety.	<i>Tempestas</i> , a time, a tempest.	<i>Vōluntas</i> , will.
<i>Pōtestas</i> , power.		<i>Vōluptas</i> , pleasure.
<i>Prōbitas</i> , probity.	<i>Obertas</i> , fertility.	<i>Xuas</i> , a duck, has <i>ānātis</i> .
<i>Satiētas</i> , a glut or disgust.		

Exc. 1. *As*, *Assis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

*Mas*, *māris*, m. a male.

*Vas*, *vātis*, m. a surety.

*Vas*, *vāsis*, m. a vessel.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, *fem*.; *as*, sextans, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *denarius*, 8; *denarius*, 9; *denarius*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *denarius*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. *as*, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, -*antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, -*antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis* or *ados*; *as*, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, -*adis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis* or -*ados*. Those that are neuter have *atis*, *as*, *būchēras*, -*atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, -*atis*, a pie.

## ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; *as*,

*rūpes*, *rupis*, a rock; *hūbēs*, *nubis*, a cloud. So,

<i>Aedes</i> , or - <i>is</i> , a temple; plur. a house.	<i>Fides</i> , a fiddle.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
<i>Cautēs</i> , a ragged rock.	<i>Linea</i> , a plague.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow, destruction.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Crātes</i> , a hurdle.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strues</i> , a heap.
<i>Fāmes</i> , a hunger.	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m or f. a pigeon.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a stake.
	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
	<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a vine branch.
<i>Ames</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a wall.
<i>Aries</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pea</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>beasis</i> , two-thirds of a pound.	<i>Pōdes</i> , <i>itis</i> , a footman.
<i>Cespes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , - <i>itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Equēs</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præses</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a life guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stīpes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Hērēs</i> , - <i>itis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termea</i> , - <i>itis</i> , an olive-bough.
<i>Imāges</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , - <i>itis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vātis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Mīles</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verrēs</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar pig.
<i>Obsēs</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *mīles*, *herēs*, *interpres*, *obsēs*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

*Abies*, -ētis, a fir-tree.  
*Cēres*, -ētis, the goddess of corn.  
*Mercēs*, -ētis, a reward, hire.  
*Mergēs*, -ētis, a handful of corn.  
*Quies*, -ētis, rest.

*Requies*, -ētis; or *requiē*, (of the fifth declension) rest.  
*Sēges*, -ētis, growing corn.  
*Tēges*, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.  
*Tūdes*, is, or -ītis, a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives :

*Ales*, -ītis, swift.  
*Hīpes*, -ētis, two-footed.  
*Quadrūpes*, -ētis, four-footed.  
*Deses*, -ītis, slothful.  
*Dives*, -ītis, rich.  
*Hēbes*, -ētis, dull.  
*Perpet*, -ētis, perpetual.

*Præpes*, -ētis, swift-winged.  
*Rēwa*, -ītis, idle.  
*Sospes*, -ītis, safe.  
*Stiperates*, -ītis, swelling.  
*Tēres*, -ētis, round and long, smooth.  
*Lēcuples*, -ētis, rich.  
*Mansues*, -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, *hic acināces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar; but some are neuter; as, *hoc cācoīthes*, an evil custom, *hippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pānāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllables *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis*, in the genitive; as, *hic magnes*, *magnētis*, a loadstone; *tāpes*, -ētis, tapestry; *lēhes*, -ētis, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dāres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Āchilles*, has *Āchillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillēus*: So *Ulysses*, *Pēricles*, *Verres*, *Aristōtēles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as, *auris*, *auris*, the ear; *āvis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

*Apis*, a bee.  
*Bilis*, the gall, anger.  
*Classis*, a fleet.  
*Fēlis*, a cat.  
*Fōris*, a door; oftener plur.  
*ſires*, -ium.

*Messis*, a harvest or crop.  
*Nāris*, the nostril.  
*Neptis*, a niece.  
*Ovis*, a sheep.  
*Pelvis*, a skin.  
*Pestis*, a plague.

*Rātis*, a raft.  
*Rūdis*, a roll.  
*Vallis*, a valley.  
*Vestis*, a garment.  
*Vitis*, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

*Axis*, *axis*, an axle-tree.  
*Aquālis*, a water-pot, an ewer.  
*Callis*, a beaten road.  
*Caulis*, the stalk of an herb.  
*Collis*, a hill.  
*Cenebris*, a kind of serpent.  
*Ensis*, a sword.

*Fascis*, a bundle.  
*Fēciālis*, a herald.  
*Follis*, a pair of bellows.  
*Fustis*, a staff.  
*Mensis*, a month.  
*Mūgillis*, or -ū, a mullet-fish.  
*Orbis*, a circle, the world.  
*Patruēlis*, a cousin-german.

*Piscis*, a fish.  
*Postis*, a post.  
*Sōdālis*, a companion.  
*Torris*, a fire-brand.  
*Unguis*, the nail.  
*Vectis*, a lever.  
*Vermis*, a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis*; as, *týran-nis*, *týrannīdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently :

Cinis, -ēris, *ashes*.  
 Cucumis, -is, or -ēris, *a cucumber*.  
 Dis, dītis, *the god of riches, or rich, an adj.*  
 Glis, gliris, *a dormouse, a rat*.  
 Impūbis, or impūbes, -is, or -ēris, *not marriageable*.  
 Lapis, -idis, *a stone*.

*Pūbis and cinis are sometimes feminine. Semis is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. Pubis and impubis, are properly adjectives: thus, Puberibus caulem foliis, a stalk with downy leaves, Virg. Æn. xii. 413. Impube corpus, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (pubes, -is, f.) of youth, Horat. Epod. 5. 13. Exanguis, bloodless, an adjective, has exanguis in the genitive.*

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

Amnis, *a river*.  
 Anguis, *a snake*.  
 Cānālis, *n conduit-pipe*.  
 Clūnis, *the buttock*.  
 Corbis, *a basket*.

Pūbis, or pūbes, -is, or ostēns -ēris, *marriageable*.  
 Pulvis, -ēris, *dust*.  
 Quiris, -itis, *a Roman*.  
 Samnis, -itis, *a Samnite*.  
 Sanguis, -inis, *blood*.  
 Sēmis, -issis, *the half of any thing*.  
 Vomis, or -er, -ēris, *a ploughshare*.

*Finis, the end; finēs, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always, masc. Scrobis, or scrobs, a ditch. Torquis, a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: *Cassis, -idis*, a helmet; *cuspis, -idis*, the point of a spear; *capis, -idis*, a kind of cup; *prōmulsis, -idis*, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis, strife, f. has, litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hērēsīs, -eos*, or *-ios*, or *-is*, a heresy; so, *bāsīs, f.* the foot of a pillar; *phrasis, a phrase*; *phthīsīs, a consumption*; *poēsīs, poetry*; *metrōpōlis, a chief city, &c.* Some have *idis*, or *idos*; as, *Pāris, -idis*, or *-idos*, the name of a man; *aspis, -idis, f.* an asp; *ēphēmēris, -idis, f.* a day book; *iris, -idis, f.* the rainbow; *pyxis, -idis, f.* a box. So, *Ægis, the shield of Pallas*; *canthāris, a sort of fly*; *pēriscēlis, a gatter*; *proboscis, an elephant's trunk*; *pyramis, a pyramid*; and *tigris, a tiger, -idis, seldom tigris*: all fem. Part have *inis*, as, *Psophis, -idis*, the name of a city: others have *inis*; as, *Eleusis, -inis*, the name of a city; and some have *entis*; as, *Simois, Simoentis*, the name of a river. *Chāris, one of the graces, has Charitis*.

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

*nēpos, -ōtis, a grandchild*; *sacerdos, -ōtis, a priest*; also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, or -or, -ōris, *a tree*.  
 Cos, cōtis, *a volvetstone*.  
 Dēs, dētis, *a dowry*.

Eos, eōis, *the morning*.  
 Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister, or brother's wife*.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower*.  
 Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, *honour*.  
 Lābos, or -or, -ōris, *labour*.  
 Lēpos, or -or, -ōris, *wit*.  
 Mos, mōris, *a custom*.  
 Ros, rōris, *dew*.

Custos, -ōdis, *a keeper*; also fem.  
 Hēros, herōis, *a hero*.  
 Mīnos, Mīs, *a king of Crete*.  
 Trōs, Trōis, *a Trojan*.  
 Bos, bōvis, m. or f. *an ox or cow*.

Exc. 3. *Os, ossis*, a bone; and *ōs, oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*, as, *hēros, -ōis*, a hero, or great man: So *Mīnos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos* a kind of wolf.

## US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as,

*pectus, pectoris*, the breast; *tempus, temporis*, time. So,

<i>Corpus, a body.</i>	<i>Frigus, cold.</i>	<i>Pennis, provisions.</i>
<i>Dēus, honour.</i>	<i>Littus, a shore.</i>	<i>Pignus, a pledge.</i>
<i>Dēdecus, disgrace.</i>	<i>Nēmus, a grove.</i>	<i>Stergus, dung.</i>
<i>Faciūsus, a great action.</i>	<i>Pēcus, cattle.</i>	<i>Tergus, a hide.</i>
<i>Foenus, urary.</i>		

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*:

<i>Xeus, chaff.</i>	<i>Mūnus, a gift or office.</i>	<i>Scēlus, a crime.</i>
<i>Fūnus, a funeral.</i>	<i>Ōlus, pot-herbs.</i>	<i>Sidus, a star.</i>
<i>Fœdus, a covenant.</i>	<i>Ōnus, a burden.</i>	<i>Vellus, a fleece of wool.</i>
<i>Gēnus, a kind or kindred.</i>	<i>Ōpus, a work.</i>	<i>Viscus, an entrail.</i>
<i>Glōmus, a clow.</i>	<i>Pondus, a weight.</i>	<i>U'eus, a bile.</i>
<i>Lātus, the side.</i>	<i>Rūdus, rubbish.</i>	<i>Valnus, a wound.</i>

Thus *acēris, funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clow, it sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

<i>Ineus, -ūdis, an owl.</i>	<i>Juventus, -ūtis, youth.</i>
<i>Pālus, -ūdis, a pool or morass.</i>	<i>Sāhis, -ūtis, safety.</i>
<i>Pēcus, (not used,) -ūdis, a sheep.</i>	<i>Scēctus, -ūtis, old age.</i>
<i>Subscus, -ūdis, a dove-tail.</i>	<i>Servitus, -ūtis, slavery.</i>
<i>Tellus, -ūris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.</i>	<i>Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.</i>
	<i>Intereus, -ūtis, an hydropsy.</i>

[*Intereus* is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive; as,

<i>Crus, erūris, the leg.</i>	<i>Rus, rūris, the country.</i>
<i>Ius, jūris, law or right; also broth.</i>	<i>Thus, thūris, frankincense.</i>
<i>Pus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any sore.</i>	<i>So Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.</i>
<i>Ligus, or, -ur, a Ligurian, has Ligūris; lepus, masc. a hare, lepōris; sus, masc. or fem. a swine, sūis; grus, masc. or fem. a crane, grūis.</i>	

*Œdipus*, the name of a man, has *Œdipūdis*: sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdipi*: The compounds of *pus* have *ūdis*; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripūdis*; but *līgūpus*, -ūdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *ūnis*; as, *Trāpezus, Trapezuntis*; *Opus, Opuntis*.

## YS.

12. Nouns in *YS* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *ysis* or *yos*; as, *hec chēlys chēlysis* or *-yos*, a harp; *Cēpyis, cēpyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man; sometimes they have *ūdis*, or *ūdos*; as *hēc chlamis, chlamydis*, or *chlamydos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ūnis*, or *ūnos*; as, *Trāci-ys, Trachynis*, or *Trachynis*, the name of a town.

## ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

<i>Æs, æris, n. brass, or money.</i>	<i>Laus, laudis, f. praise.</i>
<i>Fraus, fraudis, f. fraud.</i>	<i>Præis, predis, m. or f. a surety.</i>

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eas*; as, *Orpheus, Orpheas*; *Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables; thus, *Orphēus* genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orphēi*.

*S with a consonant before it.*

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant be-

fore it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

*trabs, trābis*, a beam; *scobs, scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiēmis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stīptis*, alms; *pars, partīs*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine :

*Chālybs, -ybis*, steel.

*Dens, -tis*, a tooth.

*Pons, -tis*, a well.

*Gryps, gryphis*, a griffin.

*Hydrops, -ōpis*, the dropsy.

*Mērops, -ōpis*, a wood-pecker.

*Mons, -tis*, a mountain.

*Pons, -tis*, a bridge.

*Seps, sēpis*, a kind of serpent; but,

*Seps, sēpis*, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine :

*Adeps, adipis*, fatness.

*Rūdēns, -tis*, a cable.

*Scrobs, scrobis*, a ditch.

*Serpens, -tis*, a serpent.

*Stirps, stirpis*, the root of a tree.

*Stirps, an offspring*, always fem.

*Animans*, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcīpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -īpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cīpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cœlebs, cœlībis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cipītis*; as, *præceps, præcipītis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipītis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipītis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucīpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis* :

*Frons, frondis*, the leaf of a tree.

*Glan, glandis*, an acorn.

So *libripens, libripēdis* m. a weigher, *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as *concor, concordis*, agreeing; *discor, disageeing*; *vecor, mad*, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

*Juglans, dis*, a walnut.

*Lens, lendis*, a nit.

Exc. 5. *lens* going, and *quiens*, being able, participles form the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rēdiens, redeuntis*; *nēquiens, nequeuntis*; but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tīryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tīrynthis*.

## T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput, capītis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sincīput, sincīpītis*, the forehead; and *occīput, -ītis*, the hind-head.

## X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

*vox, vōcis*, the voice; *lux, lūcis*, light. So,

*Appendix, -icis*, an addition; *Crux, erūcis*, a cross.

*dim, -icūla*.

*Arx, arcis*, a castle.

*Cēlex, -icis*, a pinnace.

*Cervix, -icis*, the neck.

*Cleātrix, -icis*, a scar.

*Comix, -icis*, a crown.

*Cōturnix, -icis*, a quail.

*Coxendix, -icis*, the hip.

*Fæx, -cis*, dregs.

*Falx, -cis*, a scythe.

*Fax, -icis*, a torch.

*Filix, -icis*, a fern.

*Lanx, -cis*, a plate.

*Lōdix, -icis*, a sheet.

*Mēretrix, -icis*, a courtesan.

*Merx, -cis*, merchandise.

*Nutrix, -icis*, a nurse.

*Nux, nūcis*, a nut.

*Pax, -icis*, peace.

*Pix, pīcis*, pitch.

*Rādix, -icis*, a root.

*Sālix, -icis*, a willow.

*Vibix, or -ex, -icis*, the mark

of a wound.

**Exc. 1.** Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax*, -*ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cōrax*, -*ācis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -*icis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

<i>Apex</i> , the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	<i>Climex</i> , a bug.	<i>Podex</i> , the breech.
<i>Artifex</i> , an artist.	<i>Cōdex</i> , a book.	<i>Pontifex</i> , a chief priest.
<i>Carūfex</i> , an executioner.	<i>Cūlex</i> , a gnat, a midge.	<i>Pūlex</i> , a flea.
<i>Caudex</i> , the trunk of a tree.	<i>Frūtex</i> , a shrub.	<i>Rāmex</i> , a rupture.
<i>Vervex</i> , a wedder sheep, has <i>vervēcis</i> ; <i>ſenīfex</i> , a mower of hay, <i>ſenīfēcis</i> ; <i>rēfex</i> , m. - <i>ēcis</i> , a vine-branch cut off.	<i>Index</i> , an informer.	<i>Sōrex</i> , a rat.
	<i>Lātex</i> , any liquor.	<i>Vertex</i> , the crown of the head.
	<i>Mūrex</i> , a shell-fish, purple.	<i>Vortex</i> , a whirlpool.

To these masculines add,

*Cūlix*, -*icis*, a cup.  
*Cūlyx*, -*icis*, the bud of a flower.  
*Coccyx*, -*ſigis*, vel -*icis*, a cuckoo.  
*Formix*, -*icis*, a vault.

*Oryx*, -*icis*, a wild goat.  
*Phoenix*, -*icis*, a bird so called.  
*Trādux*, -*icis*, a graft or off-set of a vine; also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

*Forax*, -*ācis*, a furnace.  
*Pānax*, -*icis*, the herb all heal.  
*Climax*, -*icis*, a ladder.  
*Forfex*, -*icis*, a pair of scissors.  
*Hālex*, -*ēcis*, a herring.

*Smūlax*, -*ācis*, the herb rope-weed.  
*Cērex*, -*icis*, a sedge.  
*Sūpellex*, *supellectilis*, household furniture.

**Exc. 2.** A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

*Calx*, -*icis*, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goat; but *calx*, time, is always fem.  
*Cortex*, -*icis*, the bark of a tree.  
*Hystrix*, -*icis*, a porcupine.  
*Imbrex*, -*icis*, a gutter or roof tile.  
*Lynx*, -*icis*, an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.  
*Līmax*, -*ācis*, a snail.

*Obex*, -*icis*, a bolt or bar.  
*Perlix*, -*icis*, a partridge.  
*Pūmex*, -*icis*, a pumice-stone.  
*Rūmex*, -*icis*, sorrel, an herb.  
*Saudix*, -*icis*, a purple colour.  
*Sītex*, -*icis*, a flint.  
*Vārix*, -*icis*, a swollen vein.

**Exc. 3.** The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

*Aquillex*, -*ēgis*, a well-maker.  
*Conjūnx*, or *ux*, -*ūgis*, a husband or wife.  
*Frux*, (not used,) -*frūgis*, f. corn.  
*Grex*, -*grēgis*, m. or f. a flock.  
*Lex*, -*lēgis*, f. a law.  
*Phālanx*, -*angis*, f. a phalanx.

*Rēmex*, -*īgis*, a rower.  
*Rex*, -*rēgis*, a king.  
*Nix*, -*ulvis*, f. snow.  
*Nox*, -*noctis*, f. night.  
*Sēnex*, -*sēnis*, (an adj.) old.

**Exc. 4.** Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onychis*, a precious stone; and so *sardōnyx*; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx*, -*ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix*, -*īgis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styx*, -*ŷgis*, f. a river in hell; *Hylax*, -*ctis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrax*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

#### DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriēte leoni ex ore exculpere prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esuriēti* and *pēdi*.

## EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

*Knussis*, *f.* a mason's rule.  
*Bōris*, *f.* the beam of a plough.  
*Gummis*, *f.* gum.  
*Mēphitis*, *f.* a damp or strong smell.  
*Rāvis*, *f.* hoarseness.  
*Sināpis*, *f.* mustard.

*Cannābis*, *f.* hemp.  
*Cūcūmis*, *m.* a cucumber.  
*Sytis*, *f.* thirst.  
*Tussis*, *f.* the cough.  
*Vis*, *f.* strength.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia — 2. of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Boētis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain: So *Atthēsis*, *Arāris*, *Athis*, *Liris*, &c. — 3. of gods; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*; *Tiberim*, or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

*Clāvis*, *f.* a key.  
*Clith*, *f.* the skin.  
*Febris*, *f.* a fever.  
*Nāvis*, *f.* a ship.

*Pelvis*, *f.* a basin.  
*Puppis*, *f.* the stern of a ship.  
*Restis*, *f.* a rope.  
*Sēcūria*, *f.* an axe.

*Sēmentis*, *f.* a sowing.  
*Strigillis*, *f.* a horse-comb.  
*Turris*, *f.* a tower.

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppm*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *as* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, *lampādēm*, or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tras*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Tras*, a Trojan; *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*: *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphn*, a dolphin: thus, *Pāna*, *æthēra*, *delphīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *as* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*, as, *Pūris*, *Pūridis*; or *Paridos*; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Paridem*, never *Parida* — So *Daphnis*.

3. Femines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner femines in *ys*, *ydes*, have *ydem*, or *yda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlāmys*, *-ydem*, or *-yda*, not *chlāmyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *es* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *mētāmorphōsis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, *metamorphōsim* or *in*, a change; *Tēthys*, *-yas*, or *-yās*, *Tēthym*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesetis*; *Tydeus*, *Tydeea*.

## EXCEPTIONS in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i*, in the ablative; as, *sēdile*, *sedili*; *animāl*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town: and the following neuters in *ar* :

*Far*, *farre*, corn.  
*Hēpar*, *-āte*, the liver.  
*Jūbar*, *-āre*, a sun-beam.

*Neectar*, *-āre*, drink of the gods.  
*Par*, *pāre*, a match, a pair.  
*Sal*, *sālē*, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vīm*, *vi*: but *canābis*, *Boētis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *tūrris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope; and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis*, *supellex*, *nectis*, *pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugilis*; so *rus*, *occlūbit*: Also, names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitāt Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers make the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *vestati*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ecce*, &c.



Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives; have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis*, -i, an halbert; *mōlāris*, -i, a millstone; *quadrirēmis*, -i, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprilis*, -i; *Dēcember*, -bri, &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adolescent, a young man.	Princeps, a prince.	Torrens, a brook.
Infans, an infant.	Sēnex, an old man.	Vigil, a watchman.

Thus, *adolescentis*, *infante*, *senē*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys* which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

### NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs*, *puppēis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcāria*.

### GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vadium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civilātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens*, *vātes*, *pānis*, *jūvēnis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. flesh.	Lis, litis, f. strife.
Cohors, -tis, f. a company.	Mus, mūris, m. a mouse.
Cor, cordis, n. the heart.	Nix, nivis, f. snow.
Cos, cotis, f. a hone or whetstone.	Nox, noctis, f. the night.
Dos, dōtis, f. a dowry.	Os, ossis, n. a bone.
Faux, faucis, f. the jaws.	Quiris, -itis, a Roman.
Gla, gliris, m. a rat	Samnis, -itis, m. or f. a Samnite.
Lar, laris, m. a household god.	Uter, utris, m. a bottle.
Linter, -tris, m. or f. a little boat.	

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*: as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bestium*; *Bos*, an ox or cow, *bos*, and in the dative, *obōus* or *blibus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um* ; as, *Macedo*, a Macedonian ; *Arabo*, an Arabian ; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian ; *Monoceros*, an unicorn ; *Lynx*, a beast so called ; *Thrax*, a Thracian ; *Macedonium*, *Arabum*, *Æthiopum*, *Monocerotum*, *Lyncum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular sometimes form the genitive plural in *on* ; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammatum*, or *epigrammaton*, an epigram ; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *-eon*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete ; thus, *manes*, m. souls departed, *manum* ; *coelites*, m. inhabitants of heavens, *coelitum* ; because they would have had in the sing. *manis*, or *manes* and *coeles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension ; as, *Saturnalia*, the feast of Saturn, *Saturnalius* and *Saturnatorum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets often contracted into *um* ; as, *nocentum* for *nocentium* ; and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted ; as, *coelituum* for *coelitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope* ; and the latter by *Epenhesis*.

### EXCEPTIONS in the DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus* ; as, *poëma*, a poem, *poëmatīs*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poematum* of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin* ; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

### EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is* ; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteīs*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a* the accusative plural also ends in *as* ; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas* ; *heros*, *heroas* ; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

### GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

*Lampas*, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or, *-ādos* ; *-ādi*, *ādem*, or *-āda* ; *-as* ; *āde* : Plur. *-ādes* ; *-ādum* ; *-ādibus* ; *-ādes*, or *-ādas* ; *-ādes*, *-adibus*.

*Troas*, f. *Troādis*, or *-ādos* ; *-i* ; *em* or *a* ; *as* ; *e* :

Pl. *Troades*, *-um* ; *tibus si* or *sin* ; *es* or *as* ; *es* ; *tibus*.

*Tros*, m. *Trois* ; *Troi* ; *Troem* or *-a* ; *Tros* ; *Troe*, &c.

*Phillis*, f. *Phillidis*, or *-dos*, *di*, *dem*, or *da* ; *i* or *is* ; *de*.

*Paris*, m. *Paridis* or *-dos* ; *di* ; *dem*, *Parim* or *in* ; *i* ; *de*.

*Chlāmys*, f. *Chlamydis* or *-ydos*, *ydi*, *ydem* or *yda*, *ys*, *yde*, &c.

*Cāpys*, m. *Capyis*, or *-yos* ; *yi* ; *ym* or *yn* ; *y* ; *ye* or *y*.

*Mētāmorphōsis*, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.

*Orpheus*, m. *-eos*, *ēi* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo*, of the second decl.

*Dido*, f. *Didūs* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

### FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine ; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are ; nom. sing. *us* ; gen.

*ūs* ; dat. *ui* ; acc. *um* ; voc. *like the nom.* ; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ui* ; gen. *uum* ; dat. and abl. *ibus* ; as,

*Fructus*, fruit *masc.*

*Cornu*, a horn, *neut.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N. fructus,</i>	<i>N. fructus,</i>	<i>N. cornu,</i>	<i>N. cornua,</i>
<i>G. fructūs,</i>	<i>G. fructuum,</i>	<i>G. cornu,</i>	<i>G. cornuū,</i>
<i>D. fructui,</i>	<i>D. fructibus,</i>	<i>D. cornu,</i>	<i>D. cornibus,</i>
<i>A. fructum,</i>	<i>A. fructus,</i>	<i>A. cornu,</i>	<i>A. cornua,</i>
<i>V. fructus,</i>	<i>V. fructus,</i>	<i>V. cornu,</i>	<i>V. cornua,</i>
<i>A. fructu,</i>	<i>A. fructibus.</i>	<i>A. cornu,</i>	<i>A. cornibus.</i>

### In like manner decline,

<i>Aditus</i> , an access.	<i>Hālitus</i> , breath.	<i>Rictus</i> , a grinning.
<i>Anfractus</i> , a winding.	<i>Haustus</i> , a draught.	<i>Ritus</i> , a rite, a ceremony.
<i>Auditus</i> , the sense of hearing.	<i>Ietus</i> , a stroke.	<i>Ritus</i> , laughter.
<i>Cantus</i> , a singing or song.	<i>Impetus</i> , an attack.	<i>Ructus</i> , a belching.
<i>Cāsus</i> , a fall, an accident or chance.	<i>Incessus</i> , a stately gate.	<i>Salus</i> , a leap, a forest.
<i>Cestus</i> , a gauntlet.	<i>Luctus</i> , grief.	<i>Sēnātus</i> , the senate, the supreme council among the Romans.
<i>Ceatus</i> , a marriage-girdle.	<i>Luxus</i> , luxury, riot.	<i>Sensus</i> , a sense, feeling, meaning.
<i>Ceetus</i> , an assembly.	<i>Mētus</i> , fear.	<i>Sexus</i> , a sex.
<i>Culus</i> , worship, dress.	<i>Misus</i> , a throw ; a turn or heat in races.	<i>Sinus</i> , a bosom.
<i>Curru</i> , a chariot.	<i>Mōtus</i> , a motion.	<i>Singultus</i> , a sob, the hiccup.
<i>Cursus</i> , a race.	<i>Nexus</i> , servitude for debt.	<i>Situs</i> , a situation.
<i>Dēcessus</i> , a departure.	<i>Nūrus</i> , a daughter-in-law.	<i>Stātus</i> , a posture.
<i>Eventus</i> , an event.	<i>Nūtus</i> , a nod.	<i>Soerus</i> , a mother-in-law.
<i>Exercitus</i> , an army.	<i>Obtūtus</i> , a look.	<i>Spiritus</i> , a breathing, spirit.
<i>Exitus</i> , an issue.	<i>Odorātus</i> , the sense of smell.	<i>Successus</i> , success.
<i>Fastus</i> , pride.	<i>Passus</i> , a pace.	<i>Sumptus</i> , expense.
<i>Flātus</i> , a blast.	<i>Principātus</i> , pre-eminence.	<i>Tactus</i> , the touch.
<i>Flētus</i> , weeping.	<i>Prōcessus</i> , a progress.	<i>Tōnstru</i> , thunder.
<i>Fluctus</i> , a wave.	<i>Progressus</i> , an advancement.	<i>Transitus</i> , a passage.
<i>Foetus</i> , an offspring.	<i>Prospectus</i> , a view.	<i>Tūmultus</i> , an uproar.
<i>Gēlu</i> , ice.	<i>Prōventus</i> , an increase, revenue.	<i>Vēnātus</i> , hunting.
<i>Gēmītus</i> , a groan.	<i>Questus</i> , gain.	<i>Vīsus</i> , the sight.
<i>Grādus</i> , a step, a degree.	<i>Questus</i> , a complaint.	<i>Victus</i> , food.
<i>Gustus</i> , the taste.	<i>Rēditus</i> , a return, an income.	<i>Vultus</i> , the countenance.
<i>Hābitus</i> , a habit, the state of mind or body.		

### Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Ficus</i> , a fig.	<i>Porticus</i> , a gallery.
<i>Anus</i> , an old woman.	<i>Mānu</i> , the hand.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Dōmus</i> , a house.	<i>Pēnus</i> , a store-house.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.

*Penus* and *specus* are sometimes *masc.* *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, *m.* the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus* ; *unimānus*, having one hand ; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension ; thus,

*Dōmus*, a house, *fem.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom. domus,</i>	<i>Nom. domus,</i>
<i>Gen. domūs, or -mi,</i>	<i>Gen. domorum, or -uum,</i>
<i>Dat. domui, or -mo,</i>	<i>Dat. domibus,</i>
<i>Acc. domum,</i>	<i>Acc. domos, or -us,</i>
<i>Voc. domus,</i>	<i>Voc. domus,</i>
<i>Abl. domo.</i>	<i>Abl. domibus.</i>

*Note.* *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house ; and *domi*, at home, or of home ; as *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

*Exc. 2.* The following nouns have *ibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

*Aëus, a needle.*  
*Arcus, a bow.*  
*Artus, a joint.*  
*Gēnu, the knee.*

*Lacus, a lake.*  
*Partus, a birth.*  
*Portus, a harbour.*

*Spēcus, a den.*  
*Tribus, a tribe.*  
*Vēra, a spit.*

*Portus, genu, and veru, have likewise ibus; as, portibus or portibus.*

**Exc. 3.** *IESUS*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus, fructuis, fructut, fructuem, fructue; fructus, fructum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus annuis causis, for annis*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu, for impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu, sibi, for usui*, lb. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currām, for currum*.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

*Res, a thing, fem.*

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.	
<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Gen. rei,</i>	<i>Gen. rerum,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>erum,</i>
<i>Dat. rei,</i>	<i>Dat. rebus,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ebus,</i>
<i>Acc. rem,</i>	<i>Acc. res,</i>	<i>em,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Abl. re.</i>	<i>Abl. rebus.</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>ebus.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Acies, the edge of a thing,</i>	<i>Ingluvies, gluttony.</i>	<i>Sānies, gore.</i>
<i>or an army in order of battle.</i>	<i>Mācies, leanness.</i>	<i>Scābies, the scab, or itch.</i>
<i>Cāries, rottenness.</i>	<i>Māteries, matter.</i>	<i>Sēries, an order.</i>
<i>Cæsāries, the hair.</i>	<i>Pernīcies, destruction.</i>	<i>Spēcies, an appearance.</i>
<i>Fācies, the face.</i>	<i>Prōlūvies, a looseness.</i>	<i>Sūperfīcies, the surface.</i>
<i>Glācies, ice.</i>	<i>Rābies, madness.</i>	<i>Tempēries, temperateness.</i>

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *merīdies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *ābies*, a fir tree; *dries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

### IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

#### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Avernus, a lake in Campania, hell.*

*Dinulfinus, a hill in Phrygia.*

*Ionārus, a hill in Thrace.*

*Massicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.*

*Mænālus, a hill in Arcadia.*

*Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.*

*Tenārus, a promontory in Laconia.*

*Tartārus, hell.*

*Tāgētus, a hill in Laconia.*

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, -orum, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jūga* or *cacumina*, or the like in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

*Jocus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*.—When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Carbāsus*, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

*Cælum*, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elÿsium*, pl. *Elÿsii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter.*

*Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastri*, and *rastra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

*Delitium*, a delight, pl. *delitiæ*; *Epulūm*, a banquet, pl. *epulæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ*, and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclitæ*; as, *vas*, *vāsis*, a vessel, plur. *vāsa*, *vasorum*; *jūgērūm*, *jūgēri*, an acre, plur. *jūgēra*, *jūgērūm*, *jūgeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jūgēris* and *jūgēre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jūgus*, or *juger*.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *sināpi*, mustard; *māne*, the morning; as, *clārum māne*, Pers. *A mane ad vesp̄ram*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cēpe*, an onion; *gau-sāpē*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, Pers. *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. Mart. *O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks. *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as, *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoptōta*; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dicis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dicis gratiā*, for *forin's sake*; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; in-

*facias*, and *incita* or *incitas*, in the acc. plur.; thus *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus; *ingrātis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergō*, for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compēde*, m. with a fetter; *casse*, m. with a net; *vepre*, m. a briar: Plur. *ambāges*, -ibus, *compedes*, -ibus; *casses*, -ium; *vepres*, -ium, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *nēcesse*, or -um, necessity; *vōlūpe*, or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespere*, or *vesperi*, the evening; *siremps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sirempse*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbēra*, *verbarum*, *verberibus*, &c. *rēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētiae*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēci*, *prece*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēmīnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*, *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cācoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrap-tōta*: *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *ditiōnis* wants it altogether; *vīcis* is not

used in the genitive plural; *ŏnis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaplotota*; thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c.; as, *justitia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trituncum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *avena*, oats; *juvenus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural:

*Aër*, -*æris*, the air.  
*Æther*, -*æris*, the sky.  
*Fumus*, -i, dung.  
*Hesperus*, -i, the evening-star.  
*Lūmus*, -i, slime.  
*Mēridies*, -*ei*, mid day.  
*Mundus*, a woman's ornaments.  
*Muscus*, -i, moss.

*Nēmo*, -*inis*, no body.  
*Pēnus*, -i, or -*ūs*, all manner of provisions.  
*Pontus*, -i, the sea.  
*Pulvis*, -*eris*, dust.  
*Sanguis*, -*inis*, blood.  
*Sōpor*, -*oris*, sleep.  
*Viscus*, -i, bird-lime.

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural:

*Argilla*, -*æ*, potter's earth.  
*Fāma*, -*æ*, fame.  
*Hūmus*, -i, the ground.  
*Ius*, -is, a plague.  
*Plebs*, *plēbis*, the common people.  
*Pūbes*, -is, the youth.  
*Quies*, -*ētis*, rest.

*Sālus*, -*ūtis*, safety.  
*Sitis*, -is, thirst.  
*Sūpellex*, -*ectilis*, household furniture.  
*Tābes*, -is, a consumption.  
*Tellus*, -*ūris*, the earth.  
*Vespēra*, -*æ*, the evening.

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural:

*Album*, -i, a list of names.  
*Dilūcūlum*, -i, the dawning of day.  
*Ebur*, -*oris*, ivory.  
*Gēlu*, ind. frost.  
*Hilum*, -i, the black speck of a bean, a trifle.  
*Iustitium*, -i, a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.  
*Lēthum*, death.

*Lūtum*, -i, clay.  
*Nihil*, *nihilum*, or *nil*, nothing.  
*Pēlāgus*, -i, the sea.  
*Pēnum*, -i, and *penus*, -*oris*, all kinds of provisions.  
*Sal*, *sālis*, salt.  
*Sēnium*, -il, old age.  
*Ver*, *vēris*, the spring.  
*Virus*, -i, poison.

5. Many nouns want the singular; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities; thus,

*Apollināres, -um, games in honour of Apollo.*  
*Bacchānālia, -ium, & -iorum, the feasts of Bacchus.*  
*Bucclīca, -orum, a book of pastorals.*  
*Olympia, -orum, the Olympic games.*  
*Syracūsae, -arum, Syracuse.*  
*Iherosolyma, -orum, Jerusalem; or Hierosolyma, &c, of the first declension.*

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

*Cancelli, lattices, or windows, made with cross-bars like a net; a rail or balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.*  
*Cāni, grey hairs.*  
*Cassēs, -um, a hunter's net.*  
*Celēres, -um, the light-horse.*  
*Gūclīci, writings.*  
*Druidēs, -um, the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*  
*Fusces, -ium, a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*  
*Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -uum, calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*  
*Fines, -ium, the borders of a country, or a country.*  
*Fūri, the gangways of a ship, seats in the circus, or the cells of a bee-hive.*  
*Fursures, -um, seats in the head.*  
*Infēri, the gods below.*  
*Lēmōres, -um, hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.*  
*Lībēri, children.*  
*Majōres, -um, ancestors.*  
*Mīnōres, -um, successors.*  
*Nātāles, -um, parentage.*  
*Postēri, posterity.*  
*Prōcēres, -um, the nobles.*  
*Pūgillāres, -um, writing-tables.*  
*Scētes, -ium, thorns.*  
*Sūpēri, the gods above.*  
*Vepaus, -ium, briars.*

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

*Alpes, -ium, the Alps.*  
*Angustiae, difficulties.*  
*Apinae, gewgaws.*  
*Argutiae, quirks, witticisms.*  
*Bigae, a chariot drawn by two horses.*  
*Trigiae, -by three.*  
*Quadrigiae, -by four.*  
*Braceae, breeches.*  
*Branchiae, the gills of a fish.*  
*Charites, -um, the three graces.*  
*Cūxae, a cradle.*  
*Dēclinae, tilles.*  
*Dīrae, imprecations, the furies.*  
*Dīvitiae, riches.*  
*Dryades, -um, the nymphs of the woods.*  
*Exētibiae, watches.*  
*Exēquiae, funerals.*  
*Exūviae, spoils.*  
*Facētae, pleasant sayings.*  
*Fecultates, -ium, one's goods and chattels.*  
*Fēriae, holidays.*  
*Gādes, -um, Cadiz.*  
*Gerrae, trifles.*  
*Hyades, -um, the seven stars.*  
*Indūciae, a truce.*  
*Indūviae, clothes to put on.*  
*Ineptiae, silly stories.*  
*Iusulae, snares.*  
*Kalendae, Nōnae, Idus, -um, names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*  
*Lāpheidīae, stone quarries.*  
*Litrē, an epistle.*  
*Laetes, -ium, the small guts.*  
*Mānūbiae, spoils taken in war.*  
*Mīuae, threats.*  
*Mīnūtae, little niceties.*  
*Nūgae, trifles.*  
*Nundinae, a market.*  
*Nuptiae, a marriage.*  
*Officiā, cheats.*  
*Opērae, workmen.*  
*Parietinae, ruinous walls.*  
*Partes, -ium, a party.*  
*Phalerae, trappings.*  
*Plāge, nets.*  
*Pleiades, -um, the seven stars.*  
*Freestigiae, enchantments.*  
*Primūtae, first fruits.*  
*Quinquaginta, exceptings.*  
*Rēliquiae, a remainder.*  
*Sālebrae, rugged places.*  
*Sālinae, salt-pits.*  
*Scālae, a ladder.*  
*Scātebrae, a spring.*  
*Scōpae, a bottom.*  
*Tēnebrae, darkness.*  
*Thermae, hot baths.*  
*Thermōpīae, straits of mount Oeta.*  
*Trīcae, toys.*  
*Valvae, folding doors.*  
*Vergiliae, the seven stars.*  
*Vindictae, a claim of liberty, a defence.*

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

*Acta, public acts or records.*  
*Aestiva, sc. castra, summer quarters.*  
*Arma, arms.*  
*Bellaria, -orum, sweetmeats.*  
*Bona, goods.*  
*Brēvia, -ium, shelves.*  
*Castra, a camp.*  
*Chāritia, -orum, a peace-feast.*  
*Clibaria, victuals.*  
*Cōmilia, an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.*  
*Crēpundia, children's dainties.*  
*Cūnābula, a cradle, an origin.*  
*Dietēria, scoffs, witticisms.*  
*Exta, the entrails.*  
*Februa, -orum, purifying sacrifices.*  
*Flabra, blasts of wind.*  
*Frāga, strawberries.*  
*Hibernā, sc. castra, winter quarters.*  
*Ilia, -ium the entrails.*  
*Incūnābula, a cradle.*  
*Insecta, insects.*  
*Iusta, funeral rites.*  
*Lāmenta, lamentations.*



*Lautia*, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.

*Lustra*, dens of wild beasts.

*Mægälia*, -ium, cottages.

*Moenia*, -ium, the walls of a city.

*Münia*, -iorum, offices.

*Orgia*, the sacred rites of Bacchus.

*Ovilia*, -ium, an inclosure where the people went to give their votes.

*Phleäria*, -ium, the den of a bear.

*Paräpherna*, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.

*Pärentälia*, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.

*Philtära*, love potions.

*Präcordia*, the bowels.

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *littera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

*Principia*, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.

*Pythia*, games in honour of Apollo.

*Rostra*, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.

*Seräta*, old clothes.

*Sponsälia*, -ium, espousals.

*Stätiva*, se. *castra*, a standing camp.

*Suövetaurilla*, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.

*Täläria*, -ium, winged shoes.

*Tesqua*, rough places.

*Transtra*, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.

*Utensilia*, -ium, utensils.

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbor* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *lauris*, a laurel-tree; *sequer*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mätäria*, -æ, or *materies*, -iäi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ei, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tonitrus*, -ds, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pénus*, -i, and -ds, m. or f. or *penus*, -äris, neut. all kinds of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *äther*, -äris, masc. and *äthra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or *idis*, a tyger; to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidäna*, -æ; or *Fidencæ*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis; and *cassida*, -dæ, a helmet. So,

*Xeinus*, & -um, a grape stone.

*Alvear*, & -e, & -ium, a bee-hive.

*Amärcus*, & -um, sweet marjoram.

*Anelle*, & -ium, an oval shield.

*Angportus*, -us, & -i, & -um, a narrow lane.

*Aphractus*, & -um, an open ship.

*Aplustre*, & -um, the flag, colours.

*Bäcülus*, & -um, a staff.

*Balteus*, & -um, a belt.

*Bätillus*, & -um, a fire shovel.

*Cäpulus*, & -um, a hilt.

*Cäpus*, & -o, a capon.

*Cäpa*, & -e, indec. an onion.

*Clypeus*, & -um, a shield.

*Collüvies*, & -io, filth, dirt.

*Compäges*, & -go, a joining.

*Conger*, & -grus, a large eel.

*Cröeus*, & -um, saffron.

*Cübütus*, & -um, a cubit.

*Dilüvium*, & -es, a deluge.

*Eläphantus*, & *Elephas*, -antis, an elephant.

*Elägu*, & -äia, an elegy.

*Essäda*, & -um, a chariot.

*Eventus*, & -um, an event.

*Fulgetra*, & -um, lightning.

*Gälärus*, & -um, a hat.

*Gibbus*, & -ä; & -er, *ëris*, or -ëri, a bunch, a swelling.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *väta-orum*, properly comes from *vätum*, and not from *väs*.

*Glütinum*, & -en, glue.

*Hebdömas*, & -äda, a week.

*Intrita*, & -um, fine mortar, minced meat.

*Librärüm*, & -a, a book-case.

*Mäcäta*, & -ca, -iäi, a wall.

*Milliare*, & -ium, a mile.

*Mönlum*, & -us, -us, an admonition.

*Muria*, & -es, -iäi, brine or pickle.

*Näsus*, & -um, the nose.

*Obsädo*, & -um, a siege.

*Oestrus*, & -um, a gad-bee.

*Ostrea*, & -um, an oyster.

*Peplus*, & -um, a veil, a robe.

*Pistrina*, & -um, a bake-house.

*Prätextus*, -us, & -um, a pretext.

*Räpa*, & -um, a turnip.

*Rüma*, & -mcn, the cud.

*Ruscus*, & -um, a brusk.

*Seps*, & *säpes*, f. an hedge.

*Segmen*, & -mentum, a piece or paring.

*Sibilus*, & -um, a hosing.

*Sinus*, & -um, a milk-pail.

*Spurelius*, & -es, nastiness.

*Strämen*, & -tum, straw.

*Suffimen*, & -tum, a perfume.

*Tignus*, & -um, a plank.

*Töral*, & -äle, a bed-covering.

*Toreular*, & -are, a wine-press.

*Viscus*, & -um, bird-time.

*Vätärnus*, & -um, a lethargy.

but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

*Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.*

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pöphulus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priämides*, the son of Priamus; *Æëtias*, the daughter of Æëtes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æäcides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æäcus; *Römülideä*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne*, are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-ä*, &c. pl. *ä*, *-darum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*; *Tyndäris*, *-idis*, or *-idos*; *Æëtias*, *-ädis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Partial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ädis*, a woman born at Troy. *Siculus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicëlis*, *-idis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mäcëdo*, *-önis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ätis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But partials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Römānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justitia*, justice; *bönitas*, goodness; *dulcëdo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *ducis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signi-

fying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartula*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corculum*, a little heart; *reticulum*, a small net; *scabellum*, a small form; *lapillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pæcella*, a little page; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rete*, *scamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *página*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*, *cistellula*; from *homo*, *hōmuncio*, *hōmunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*; as, *Capito*, *-ōnis*, having a large head: so, *nāso*, *lābeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *amor* love; *doctrina*, learning; from *amo*, and *dōceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *amātor*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creātūra*, a creature.

## ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense; thus we can say, "a good thing;" but we cannot say, "a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation except that of the degrees of comparison.

## LATIN ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases: but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

<i>Xeer, sharp.</i>	<i>Cēlēber, famous.</i>	<i>Pēdestēr, on foot.</i>
<i>Alīser, cheerful.</i>	<i>Cēlēter, swift.</i> [horse.	<i>Sālūber, wholesome.</i>
<i>Campester, belonging to a plain.</i>	<i>Equester, belonging to a</i>	<i>Sylvestēr, woody.</i>
	<i>Pāluster, marshy.</i>	<i>Vōlūcer, swift.</i>

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um* ; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good : thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. bōn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bōn-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-o,	-ā,	-o.	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

In like manner decline,

<i>Xeerbus unripe, bitter.</i>	<i>Oecus blind.</i>	<i>Effetus past having young.</i>
<i>Xeidus sour, tart.</i>	<i>Callidus cunning.</i>	<i>Egēnus poor.</i>
<i>Xēlūus sharp.</i>	<i>Calvus bald.</i>	<i>Egrēgius remarkable.</i>
<i>Adulterānus counterfeited.</i>	<i>Cāmūrus crooked.</i>	<i>Elūus boiled.</i>
<i>Agrotūus sick.</i>	<i>Candidus fair, sincere.</i>	<i>Exīguus small.</i>
<i>Amūlus dying with.</i>	<i>Cānus hoary.</i>	<i>Exīmius excellent.</i>
<i>Equus equal, just.</i>	<i>Cārus dear.</i>	<i>Exōtēnus from a foreign country.</i>
<i>Ahēnus of brass.</i>	<i>Cassus void.</i>	<i>Externus outward.</i>
<i>Albus white.</i>	<i>Castus chaste.</i>	<i>Facētus witty.</i>
<i>Altus high.</i>	<i>Cautus wary.</i>	<i>Fecundus eloquent.</i>
<i>Amārus bitter.</i>	<i>Cāvus hollow.</i>	<i>Falsus false, lying.</i>
<i>Amoenus pleasant.</i>	<i>Celūus high, lofty.</i>	<i>Fāmēlicus famished.</i>
<i>Ambīguus doubtful.</i>	<i>Cernuus sleeping.</i>	<i>Fātuus foolish.</i>
<i>Amicus friendly.</i>	<i>Certus certain, sure.</i>	<i>Faustus lucky.</i>
<i>Amplius large.</i>	<i>Clārus famous.</i>	<i>Fērus wild, savage.</i>
<i>Annus yearly.</i>	<i>Claudus lame.</i>	<i>Fessus weary.</i>
<i>Angustus narrow.</i>	<i>Cerūlus or -ēus azure,</i>	<i>Festinus hastening.</i>
<i>Antīquus ancient.</i>	<i>sky-coloured.</i>	<i>Festus festival.</i>
<i>Apricus sunny.</i>	<i>Commōdus convenient.</i>	<i>Fidus faithful.</i>
<i>Aptus fit.</i>	<i>Concinuus fine, neat.</i>	<i>Finīsimus neighbouring.</i>
<i>Arcānus secret.</i>	<i>Cōruseus glittering.</i>	<i>Firmus firm, steady.</i>
<i>Aretus strait.</i>	<i>Crassus thick.</i>	<i>Flaccus slipshod.</i>
<i>Ardūus lofty.</i>	<i>Crēpērus doubtful.</i>	<i>Flāvus yellow.</i>
<i>Argūtus quick, shrill.</i>	<i>Crispus curled.</i>	<i>Fœdus ugly.</i>
<i>Assus roasted, hot, pure.</i>	<i>Crūdus raw.</i>	<i>Fœtus big with young.</i>
<i>Astūtus cunning.</i>	<i>Cunctus all.</i>	<i>Formosus fair.</i>
<i>Avārus covetous.</i>	<i>Curtus short.</i>	<i>Frētus trusting.</i>
<i>Aridus greedy.</i>	<i>Curvus crooked.</i>	<i>Frivōlus trifling.</i>
<i>Augustus venerable.</i>	<i>Cynicus churlish.</i>	<i>Fulvus yellow.</i>
<i>Austērus harsh, rough.</i>	<i>Dadālus poet. curiously made.</i>	<i>Furvus swarthy.</i>
<i>Balbus stammering.</i>	<i>Dēcorus graceful.</i>	<i>Fuscus brown.</i>
<i>Barbārus savage.</i>	<i>Densus thick.</i>	<i>Garrūlus prattling.</i>
<i>Bardus dull, slow.</i>	<i>Dignus worthy.</i>	<i>Gēlīdus cold as ice.</i>
<i>Beātus blessed.</i>	<i>Dieus direful.</i>	<i>Gēminus double.</i>
<i>Bellus pretty.</i>	<i>Disertus eloquent.</i>	<i>Germānus of the same stock, real.</i>
<i>Bēnīgnus kind.</i>	<i>Diuturnus lasting.</i>	<i>Gibbus convex.</i>
<i>Bimūus two years old.</i>	<i>Doctus learned.</i>	<i>Gilvus flesh-coloured.</i>
<i>Blacus lisping.</i>	<i>Dūbius doubtful.</i>	<i>Glaucus grey.</i>
<i>Blandus flattering.</i>	<i>Dūrus hard.</i>	<i>Gnārus skilful.</i>
<i>Brūtus brutish, senseless.</i>	<i>Ebrius drunk.</i>	
<i>Cādūcus falling.</i>		

<b>Grātus, active.</b>	<b>Nimius, too much.</b>	<b>Reus, impeached.</b>
<b>Grātus, thankful.</b>	<b>Noxius, hurtful.</b>	<b>Rigidus, cold, stiff, severe.</b>
<b>Hirsūtus, hirtus, rough.</b>	<b>Nūdus, naked.</b>	<b>Riguus, moist, well-watered.</b>
<b>Hispidus, rugged.</b>	<b>Nuntiū, bringing news.</b>	<b>eil.</b>
<b>Honestus, honourable, honest.</b>	<b>Obēsus, fat, dull.</b>	<b>Rōbustus, strong.</b>
<b>Hornus, of this year.</b>	<b>Obliquus, crooked.</b>	<b>Rocidus, dewy.</b>
<b>Hūmānus, human, belonging to a man, humane, polite.</b>	<b>Obsecrūsus, obscene, ominous.</b>	<b>Rōundus, round.</b>
<b>Hūmidus, moist.</b>	<b>Obscūrus, dark, mean.</b>	<b>Rūbescens, blushing.</b>
<b>Idōneus, fit.</b>	<b>Obolitus, old, out of use.</b>	<b>Rūsus, reddish.</b>
<b>Jejūnus, fasting.</b>	<b>Obstipus, stiff, wry.</b>	<b>Russus, of a carnation colour.</b>
<b>Ignarus, ignorant.</b>	<b>Obtūsus, blunt.</b>	<b>Rūsticus, stery, red.</b>
<b>Ignāvus, slothful.</b>	<b>Odiōsus, hateful.</b>	<b>Sævus, cruel.</b>
<b>Imprōbus, wicked.</b>	<b>Opacūsus, dark, shady.</b>	<b>Sāsus, knowing.</b>
<b>Incrētus, inchoate.</b>	<b>Optimūsus, rich, fat.</b>	<b>Salus, saved, smart.</b>
<b>Inelūsus, renowned.</b>	<b>Opiparūsus, costly, dainty.</b>	<b>Salvus, safe.</b>
<b>Indigus, needy.</b>	<b>Opportūnus, seasonable.</b>	<b>Sanctus, holy.</b>
<b>Industrius, diligent.</b>	<b>Opulentus, v. -ens, rich.</b>	<b>Sānus, sound.</b>
<b>Ineptus, unfit.</b>	<b>Orbus, destitute.</b>	<b>Saucus, wounded.</b>
<b>Infidus, unfaithful.</b>	<b>Otiōsus, at leisure.</b>	<b>Sævus, left.</b>
<b>Ingenūsus, free-born.</b>	<b>Pætus, pink-eyed.</b>	<b>Seambus, bow-legged.</b>
<b>Inimicus, unfriendly.</b>	<b>Pallidus, pale.</b>	<b>Seaurus, club-footed.</b>
<b>Iniquus, uneven, unjust.</b>	<b>Parvus, sparing.</b>	<b>Sēcūrus, secure, out of danger.</b>
<b>Intensus, intense, strict.</b>	<b>Patrimus, { having father</b>	<b>Sēdulus, careful.</b>
<b>Invidus, envious.</b>	<b>Matrimus, { and mother</b>	<b>Sentus, rough.</b>
<b>Involūsus, unwilling.</b>	<b>Pativus, wide, spreading.</b>	<b>Serēnus, clear.</b>
<b>Iracundus, passionate.</b>	<b>Paulus, little.</b>	<b>Serius, earnest.</b>
<b>Iritus, angry.</b>	<b>Pauci, -æ, -æ, few.</b>	<b>Serius, late.</b>
<b>Irritus, fruitless, vain.</b>	<b>Pertus, skilful.</b>	<b>Serēsus, severe, harsh.</b>
<b>Juēndus, pleasant.</b>	<b>Puridus, treacherous.</b>	<b>Siccus, dry.</b>
<b>Lætus, joyful.</b>	<b>Perpetuus, continual.</b>	<b>Simus, flat-nosed.</b>
<b>Lævus, on the left hand.</b>	<b>Perpleuus, evident.</b>	<b>Sincerus, sincere, pure.</b>
<b>Largus, large.</b>	<b>Pisus, pious.</b>	<b>Situs, situated, placed.</b>
<b>Lascivus, wanton.</b>	<b>Plānus, plain.</b>	<b>Sobrius, sober, temperate.</b>
<b>Lassus, weary.</b>	<b>Plēnus, full.</b>	<b>Socius, in alliance, a companion.</b>
<b>Latus, broad.</b>	<b>Plērque, -æque, -ique, the most part : sing. fem. plērque.</b>	<b>Solidus, solid.</b>
<b>Laxus, loose, slack.</b>	<b>Posteus, on the back part of a house.</b>	<b>Sordidus, dirty.</b>
<b>Lentus, slow, pliant.</b>	<b>Præditus, endowed with.</b>	<b>Spinosus, prickly.</b>
<b>Lēpidus, pretty, witty.</b>	<b>Prāvus, wicked.</b>	<b>Spissus, thick.</b>
<b>Limpidus, clear, pure.</b>	<b>Præcarius, at another's pleasure.</b>	<b>Splendidus, bright.</b>
<b>Limpus, squinting.</b>	<b>Priscus, old, out of use.</b>	<b>Spārus, base-born, not genuine.</b>
<b>Lippus, bicar-eyed.</b>	<b>Pristinus, ancient.</b>	<b>Squallidus, nasty.</b>
<b>Longinquus, far off.</b>	<b>Privatus, private, retired.</b>	<b>Sulidus, foolish.</b>
<b>Longus, long.</b>	<b>Privus, single, peculiar.</b>	<b>Strēnuus, active, able.</b>
<b>Lubricus, slippery.</b>	<b>Prōbus, good, honest.</b>	<b>Strigōsus, lean, lank.</b>
<b>Lucidus, bright.</b>	<b>Prōcūsus, high, tall.</b>	<b>Stultus, foolish.</b>
<b>Lūridus, pale, ghastly.</b>	<b>Prōfānus, profane, unholy.</b>	<b>Stupidus, stupid, dull.</b>
<b>Luscus, blind of one eye.</b>	<b>Prōfundus, deep.</b>	<b>Subitus, sudden.</b>
<b>Mācilentus, lean.</b>	<b>Prōmiscuus, confused.</b>	<b>Subsecivus, cut off, or taken from other business.</b>
<b>Māliguus, spiteful.</b>	<b>Promptus, ready.</b>	<b>Sidus, fair, without clouds.</b>
<b>Mancus, maimed, lame.</b>	<b>Prōnus, with the face downward.</b>	<b>Sūperbus, proud.</b>
<b>Manifestus, evident.</b>	<b>Prōpērus, hasty.</b>	<b>Sūpinus, lying on the back.</b>
<b>Mareldus, rotten.</b>	<b>Prōpinquus, near.</b>	<b>Surdus, deaf.</b>
<b>Mēdius, mid or middle.</b>	<b>Proprius, proper.</b>	<b>Tacitus, silent.</b>
<b>Mendicus, beggar-like.</b>	<b>Prōtervus, saucy.</b>	<b>Tantus, so great.</b>
<b>Mēstruus, monthly.</b>	<b>Pūblicus, public.</b>	<b>Tardus, slow.</b>
<b>Mērcus, without mixture.</b>	<b>Pūdicus, chaste.</b>	<b>Tēmērarius, rash.</b>
<b>Mērus, pure.</b>	<b>Pullus, blackish.</b>	<b>Tempestivus, seasonable.</b>
<b>Mirus, wonderful.</b>	<b>Pūrus, pure, clean.</b>	<b>Tēmulentus, drunken.</b>
<b>Mōdestus, modest.</b>	<b>Pūtus, without mixture.</b>	<b>Tēpidus, lukewarm.</b>
<b>Mōstus, sad.</b>	<b>Quantus, how great.</b>	<b>Timidus, fearful.</b>
<b>Mōlestus, troublesome.</b>	<b>Quadrūsus, four years old.</b>	<b>Torvus, stern.</b>
<b>Mōrōsus, surly.</b>	<b>Quōtidianus, daily.</b>	<b>Tranquillus, calm.</b>
<b>Mōrus, foolish.</b>	<b>Rābidus, mad.</b>	<b>Trēpidus, trembling for fear.</b>
<b>Mūcldus, musty.</b>	<b>Rancidus, rank, stale.</b>	<b>Triculentus, cruel.</b>
<b>Mundus, neat.</b>	<b>Rārus, rare, thin.</b>	<b>Truncus, maimed, wanting.</b>
<b>Mūtillus, maimed, without horns.</b>	<b>Raucus, hoarse.</b>	<b>Tūmidus, swollen.</b>
<b>Mūtus, dumb.</b>	<b>Rectus, right, straight,</b>	<b>Turbidus, muddy.</b>
<b>Mūtus, mutual, lent or borrowed,</b>		

Tutus, *safe*.  
 Udu, *wet*.  
 Uneus, *crooked*.  
 Onicus, *only*.  
 Urbānus, *courteous*.  
 Vācūus, *at leisure*.  
 Vācuus, *empty, void*.  
 Vāgus, *wandering*.  
 Valgus, *bow-legged*.

Vālidus, *strong*.  
 Vānu, *vain, empty*.  
 Vārius, *various, different*.  
 Vārus, *bandy-legged*.  
 Vastus, *huge*.  
 Vēgētus, *vigorous*.  
 Vēnustus, *comely*.  
 Verboſus, *talkative*.  
 Vērēcūmīus, *bashful*.

Vērēcūmīus, *born in one's house*.  
 Vērus, *trap*.  
 Vesicus, *fit for eating*.  
 Viciuus, *neighbouring*.  
 Viduus, *deprived*.  
 Viciuus, *withered*.  
 Vividus, *lively*.  
 Vivus, *alive*.

### Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender*.

Sing.

Plur.

N. tē-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,	N. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
G. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-erā,	-ero.	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

### In like manner decline,

Asper, *rough*.

Gibber, *crook-backed*.

Miser, *wretched*.

Cēter, (*hardly used*) the

Lācer, *tear*.

Prosper, *prosperous*.

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, lāniger, bearing wool; ōpifer, bringing help, &c. Likewise sātūr, sātūra, sātūrum, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, āter, atra, atrum, black; gen. atrī, atræ, atrī; dat. atra, atræ, atræ, &c. So,

Ōger, *sick*.

Mācer, *lean*.

Sācer, *sacred*.

Crēber, *frequent*.

Niger, *black*.

Sēber, *rough*.

Glāber, *smooth*.

Piger, *slow*.

Tēter, *ugly*.

Intēger, *entire*.

Pulcher, *fair*.

Vāfer, *crafty*.

Lūdīcer, *ludicrous*.

Rūber, *red*.

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular, in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all their genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, *one*.

Alter, alterius, *one of two, the other*.

Alius, -ius, *one of many, another*.

Neuter, -trius, *neither*.

Nullus, nullius, *none*.

Uter, utrius, *whether of the two*.

Solus, -ius, *alone*.

Uterque, utriusque, *both*.

Totus, -ius, *whole*.

Uterlibet, -triuslibet, { *which of the two*

Ullus, -ius, *any*.

Utervis, -triusvis, { *you please*.

Alteruter, *the one or the other*, alterutrus, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *felix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

*Sing.**Plur.*

N. fē-līx,	-īx,	-īx,	N. fēl-īces,	-īces,	-īcia,
G. fēl-īcis,	-īcis,	-īcis,	G. fēl-īcium,	-īcium,	-īcium,
D. fēl-īci,	-īci,	-īci,	D. fēl-īcibus,	-īcibus,	-īcibus,
A. fēl-īcem,	-īcem,	-īx,	A. fēl-īces,	-īces,	-īcia,
V. fēl-īx,	-īx,	-īx,	V. fēl-īces,	-īces,	-īcia,
A. fēl-īce, or	-īci, &c.		A. fēl-īcibus,	-īcibus,	-īcibus.

## In like manner decline,

Amens, <i>mod.</i>	Philax, <i>deceitful.</i>	Rēpens, <i>fresh.</i>
Atrōx, <i>-ācis, cruel.</i>	Pērax, <i>fertile.</i>	Rēpens, <i>sudden.</i>
Audax, <i>-ācis, &amp; -ens, -tis, bold.</i>	Fērox, <i>fierce.</i>	Sāgax, <i>-ācis, sagacious.</i>
Blīx, <i>-īcis, woven with a double thread.</i>	Frequens, <i>frequent.</i>	Sālix, <i>-ācis, lustful.</i>
Cāpax, <i>capacious.</i>	Ingens, <i>huge.</i>	Sāpiens, <i>wise.</i>
Cleux, <i>-ācis, tame.</i>	Iners, <i>-tis, sluggish.</i>	Sōdors, <i>shrewd.</i>
Clēmens, <i>-tis, merciful.</i>	Insons, <i>guiltless.</i>	Sons, <i>guilty.</i>
Contūmax, <i>stubborn.</i>	Mendax, <i>lying.</i>	Tēnax, <i>tenacious.</i>
Dēmens, <i>mad.</i>	Mordax, <i>biting, satirical.</i>	Trux, <i>-ācis, cruel.</i>
Edax, <i>gluttonous.</i>	Pernix, <i>-īcis, swift.</i>	Über, <i>-ācis, fertile.</i>
Efficax, <i>effectual.</i>	Pervicax, <i>wilful.</i>	Veheemens, <i>vehement.</i>
Elēgans, <i>handsome.</i>	Pētūlans, <i>forward, saucy.</i>	Vēlox, <i>-ācis, swift.</i>
	Pregnans, <i>with child.</i>	Vōrax, <i>devouring.</i>
	Prūdēns, <i>prudent.</i>	

2. Adjectives of two terminations ; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *mīte*, for the neut. meek ; so, *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker ; thus,

*Sing.**Plur.*

N. mītis,	mitis,	mīte,	N. mītes,	mites,	mitia,
G. mītis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mītium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. mīti,	miti,	miti,	D. mītibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mītem,	mitem,	mīte,	A. mītes,	mites,	mitia,
V. mītis,	mitis,	mīte,	V. mītes,	mites,	mitia,
A. mīti,	miti,	miti.	A. mītibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

## In like manner decline,

Agilis <i>active.</i>	Ignōbilis <i>of mean parentage.</i>	Rūdis <i>raw.</i>
Amābilis <i>lovely.</i>	Inamānis <i>huge, cruel.</i>	Sagax <i>shrewd.</i>
Biennis <i>of two years.</i>	Inānis <i>empty.</i>	Segnīs <i>slow.</i>
Brēvis <i>short.</i>	Ineōlūmis <i>safe.</i>	Sōlennis <i>annual, solemn.</i>
Civīlis <i>courteous.</i>	Infāmis <i>infamous.</i>	Sterilis <i>barren.</i>
Cœlestis <i>heavenly.</i>	Insignis <i>remarkable.</i>	Suāvis <i>sweet.</i>
Cōmis <i>mild, affable.</i>	Jūgis <i>perpetual.</i>	Subtilis <i>subtle, fine.</i>
Crūdēlis <i>cruel.</i>	Lævis <i>smooth.</i>	Tālis <i>such.</i>
Debīlis <i>weak.</i>	Lēnis <i>gentle.</i>	Tēnuis <i>small.</i>
Dēformis <i>ugly.</i>	Lēvis <i>light.</i>	Terrestris <i>earthly.</i>
Dōcēlis <i>teachable.</i>	Mēdiocris <i>middling.</i>	Terrībilis <i>dreadful.</i>
Dulcis <i>sweet in taste.</i>	Mirābilis <i>wonderful.</i>	Tristis <i>sad.</i>
Exilis <i>slender.</i>	Mollis <i>soft.</i>	Turpis <i>base.</i>
Emanguis <i>bloodless.</i>	Omnis <i>all.</i>	Utilis <i>useful.</i>
Fortis <i>brave.</i>	Pernix <i>swift, fleet.</i>	Vilis <i>worthless.</i>
Frāgilis <i>brittle.</i>	Putris <i>rotten.</i>	Vīridis <i>green.</i>
Grandis <i>great.</i>	Pinguis <i>fat.</i>	Vitilis <i>pitam.</i>
Grāvis <i>heavy.</i>	Qualis <i>of what kind.</i>	
Hilaris <i>cheerful.</i>		

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. mīti-or, -or, -us,	N. mīti-ōres, -ōres, -ōra,	
G. mīti-ōris, -ōris, -ōris,	G. mīti-orum, -orum, -orum,	
D. mīti-ori, -ori, -ori,	D. mīti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus,	
A. mīti-orem, -orem, -us,	A. mīti-ores, -ores, -ora,	
V. mīti-or, -or, -us,	V. mīti-ores, -ores, -ora,	
A. mīti-ore, or -ori, &c.	A. mīti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus.	

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *acer* or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *aore*, for the neuter sharp; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. ā-acer or ācris, ācris, acre,	N. a-cres, -cres, -cria,	
G. a-cris, -cris, -cris,	G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,	
D. a-cri, -cri, -cri,	D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus,	
A. a-crem, -crem, -cre,	A. a-cres, -cres, -cria,	
V. a-cer, or acris, -cris, -cre,	V. a-cres, -cres, -cria,	
A. a-cri, -cri, -cri.	A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.	

In like manner *ālācer*, or *alacris*, *cēler*, or *celēris*, *cēlēber*, or *celebris*, *salūber* or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c.

### RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular; but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

### Exceptions.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvālis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compos*, -*itis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -*otis*, unable; *impis*, -*ēpis*, poor; *supplex*, -*icis*, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -*ēris*, fertile; *convors*, -*itis*, sharing, a partner; *dēgener*, -*ēris*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *pūber*, -*ēris*, of age, marriageable; and *celor*. Also compounds in *ceps*, *sex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -*icis*, cunning, an artist; *bipect*, -*ēdis*, two-footed; *bicorpor*, -*ōris*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neuter sing. and almost never the neuter plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmor*, mindful, which has *mēmōri* and *mēmōrum*: also, *dēsēs*, *rēsēs*, *hēber*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēres*, *concolor*, *versicolor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pārī*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compāre*, or -*ri*. *Vetus*, old has *vetēra*, and *vetērum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*; and in the plural, *plūres*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Expes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -*e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Pōtis* has also sometimes *pōtis* in the neuter.

### Remarks.

1. Comparatives and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*: and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberis regantē*, not *regantē*, in the reign of Tiberius.



2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrice*, *ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricia*: so *ulter*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *limus*, *sonnus*, and *animus*, end in *us* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivus*, -*is*, -*e*; and *declivus*, -*a*, -*um*, steep; *imbacillus*, and *imbacillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimus*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrenus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *suavillanimitis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *puellanimus*, &c. So *semitanimis*, *intermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *preclivis*; rarely *semitanimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cordatus*, *māritus*, *cælestis*, *adāmantinus*, *corporeus*, *agrestis*, *æstivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called *Diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *durtusculus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vinosus*, *vindulentus*, given to much wine; *operosus*, laborious; *plumbosus*, full of lead; *nodosus*, knotty; full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *auritus*, having long or large ears; *nasutus*, having a large nose; *litteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scoticus*, *paternus*, *herilis*, *alienus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis* amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *seria*, *se*, *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, *se*, *ventis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

### 1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	one.	Triginta,	thirty.
Duo,	two.	Quadrīginta,	forty.
Tres,	three.	Quinquāginta,	fifty.
Quattuor,	four.	Sexāginta,	sixty.
Quinque,	five.	Septuāginta,	seventy.
Sex,	six.	Octōginta,	eighty.
Septem,	seven.	Nōnaginta,	ninety.
Octo,	eight.	Centum,	a hundred.
Novem,	nine.	Dūcenti,	two hundred.
Dēca,	ten.	Trēcenti,	three hundred.
Undēca,	eleven.	Quadrīngenti,	four hundred.
Dūdēca,	twelve.	Quīngenti,	five hundred.
Trēdēca,	thirteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Quattuordecim,	fourteen.	Septīngenti,	seven hundred.
Quīndecim,	fifteen.	Octīngenti,	eight hundred.
Sexdecim,	sixteen.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Septendecim,	seventeen.	Mille,	a thousand.
Octōdēca,	eighteen.	Duo millia, or	two thousand.
Nōvendecim,	nineteen.	bis mille,	
Vīginti,	twenty.	Decem millia, or	ten thousand.
Vīginti unus, or	twenty-one.	dēca mille,	
Vīginti duo, or		Vīginti millia, or	twenty thousand.
Duo & vīginti,	twenty-two.	vicies mille,	

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

*Unus* is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, in *unis adibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. 5. 3. 75. Unæ nuptiæ*, *Id. And. iv. 1. 51. In una macchia convessere*, *Sallust, Cat. 6.* or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes, *Cic. Flacc. 29.*

*Duo* and *tres* are thus declined :

Plur.			Plur.		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *nulle*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *-ta*; *ducentorum*, *-tarum*, *-torum*, &c.

*Mille* is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

*Mille*, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *nulle hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say  *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum*, or *centena millia hominum*; *decies centena millia*, a million; *vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1 Primus. a, um.	Singuli. æ, a.	Semel. once.
2 secundus.	bini.	bis, twice.
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, thrice.
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quater, four times.
5 quintus.	quini.	quinques, &c.
6 sextus.	seni.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septeni.	septies.
8 octavus.	octoni.	octies.
9 nonus.	noveni.	novies.
10 decimus.	deni.	decies.
11 undecimus.	undeni.	undecies.
12 duodecimus.	duodeni.	duodecies.
13 decimus tertius.	tridēni. terni deni.	tredecies.
14 decimus quartus.	quaterni deni.	quatuordecies.
15 decimus quintus.	quindenī.	quindecies.
16 decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17 decimus septimus.	septeni deni.	decies ac septies.
18 decimus octavus.	octoni deni.	decies ac octies.
19 decimus nonus.	noveni deni.	decies et novies.
20 vigesimus, vicesimus.	vicēni.	vicies.
21 vigesimus primus.	vicēni singuli.	vicies semel.
30 trigesimus, tricesimus.	treceñi.	trices.
40 quadragesimus.	quadrāgēni.	quadrāgies.
50 quinquagesimus.	quingūgēni.	quingūgies.
60 sexagesimus.	sexāgēni.	sexages.
70 septuagesimus.	septuāgēni.	septuāgies.
80 octogesimus.	octogēni.	octūgies.
90 nonagesimus.	nonagēni.	nonāgies.

100	centesimus.	centeni.	centies.
200	duccentesimus.	duccēni.	duccienties.
300	treccentesimus.	treccēni.	treccienties.
400	quadringentesimus.	quāter centeni.	quadringenties.
500	quingentesimus.	quinquies centeni.	quingenties.
600	sexcentesimus.	sexies centeni.	sexcenties.
700	septingentesimus.	septies centeni.	septingenties.
800	octingentesimus.	octies centeni.	octingenties.
900	nongentesimus.	novies centeni.	nūningenties.
1000	millesimus.	millēni.	millies.
2000	bis millesimus.	bis milleni.	bis millies.

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, -*teis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtīplex*.

*Quot*, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *totīdem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quocunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bi-mus*, *tri-mus*, &c. *bi-ennis*, *tri-ennis*, &c. *bi-mensis*, *tri-mensis*, &c. *bi-libris*, *tri-libris*, &c. *bi-ārtius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēdārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēdārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, ~~and~~ always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greater degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

### Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *er* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most* put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; and Polysyllables by *more* and *most*; as, *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

### Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the mascu-

line and feminine, and *us* for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *altus*, high, genit. *alti*: comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher; superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mītis*, meek; dative *mīti*; *mītiōr*, -or, -us, meeker; *mītiſsimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*, &c.

### Irregular and defective Comparison.

1. Bonus,	mēlior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	peſſimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	miſimus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more,	most.

Fem. Multa, plurima; neut. multum, plus, plurimum; plur. multi, plures, plurimi; multæ, plures; plurimæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *leastest*; *worst*, for *worrest*.

### 2. These five have their superlative in *limus*:

Facilis, facillor, facillimus, easy.	Imbecillis, imbecillior, imbecillimus, weak.
Gracilis, gracilior, gracillimus, lean.	Similis, similior, similissimus, like.
Humilis, humilior, humillimus, low.	

### 3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Citer, eiterior, citimus, near.	Intērus, intērior, intimus, inward.
Dexter, dexterior, dextimus, right.	Mātūrus, -ior, maturissimus, or maturissimus, ripe.
Sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus, left.	Postērus, posterior, postremus, behind.
Exter, -erior, extandus, or extrēmus, outward.	Sūpērus, -rior, suprēmus, or summus, high.
Infērus, -ior, infimus, or imus, below.	Vētus, vētiōr, vētērrimus, old.

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lōquus*, *fīcus*, and *vōlus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mālēdīcus*, railing, *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnīlōquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēfīcus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent; *mirīfīcus*, wonderful; -*entior*, -*entissimus*, or *mirīfīcissimus*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

### 1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

*Detrior, worse, deterrimus.*  
*Ociior, swifter, so is citius.*  
*Prior, former, prius.*

*Præprior, nearer, proximus, nearer or next.*  
*Ultior, farther, ultimus.*

## 2. The following want the comparative :

*Inclitatus, inclutissimus, renowned.*  
*Mëritus, meritissimus, deserving.*  
*Novus, novissimus, new.*

*Nuperus, nuperissimus, late.*  
*Par, parissimus, equal.*  
*Sacer, sacerrimus, sacred.*

## 3. The following want the superlative :

*Adolescens, adolescentior, young.*  
*Diuturnus, diuturnior, lasting.*  
*Ingens, ingentior, huge.*  
*Juvenis, junior, young.*

*Opimus, opimior, rich.*  
*Pronus, pronior, inclined downwards.*  
*Satur, satior, full.*  
*Senex, senior, old.*

To supply the superlative of *juvenis*, or *adolescent*, we say, *minimus natus*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natus*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *ilis*, and *ilis*, also want the superlative: as, *civilis*, *civillior*, civil; *regalis*, *regallior*, regal; *luctuosus*, *luctuosior*, lamentable. So *juvenilis*, youthful; *exilis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcanus*, *-ior*, secret; *declivis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *linguus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

*Anterior*, former; *æquior*, worse; *satior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicolor*, of divers colours; *pestifer*, poisonous; also adjectives in *us* pure, in *itus*, *itus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dubius*, doubtful; *vacuus*, empty; *fugitivus*, that flies away; *matutinus*, early; *candrus*, shrill; *legitimus*, lawful; *tenuis*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ilis*, soon or early ripe; *maius*, *eg-nus*, *læter*, *mëmor*, *suspens*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egens*, needy; *magis egens*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egens*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

## PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands instead of a Noun.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

## ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as, *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he*, *she*, or *it falls*.

*I* is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he*, *she*, or *it*, together with all other words, of the third; and so in the plural number, *we*, *ye*, *they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known.

But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he, she, it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

*Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.*

	<i>Singular. Persons.</i>			<i>Plural. Persons.</i>		
<i>Cases.</i>	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Nom.</i>	I,	thou,	he, she, it;	we,	ye or you,	they.
<i>Gen.</i>	mine,	thine,	his, hers, its;	ours,	yours,	theirs,
<i>Acc.</i>	me,	thee,	him, her, it;	us,	you,	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*. *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those*. To these add the adjectives *other, one*, which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones*: as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

*Who, which, that*, are called *Relatives*, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the *Antecedent*. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whose, whom*. *His*, and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as, *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

*Who, which, what, whether*, are called *Interrogatives*, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called *Indefinites*.

*Own*, and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my, or mine own hand, myself, yourselves*. *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*, as *itself*. *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hisself, theirselves*.

## LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

### Ego, I.

	<i>Sing.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego, I,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mei, of me,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi, to me,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>me, me,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>me, with me.</i>

	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nos, we,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrum, or nostri, of us,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nobis, to us,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nos, us,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nobis, with us.</i>

## Tu, thou.

Sing.		Plur.	
N. tu, <i>thou</i> ,	} or you.	N. vos, <i>ye or you</i> .	}
G. tui, <i>of thee</i> ,		G. vestrum, <i>or vestri, of you</i> .	
D. tibi, <i>to thee</i> ,		D. vobis, <i>to you</i> .	
A. te, <i>thee</i> ,		A. vos, <i>you</i> .	
V. tu, <i>O thou</i> ,		V. vos, <i>O ye or you</i> .	
A. te, <i>with thee</i> ,		A. vobis, <i>with you</i> .	

## Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.		Plur.	
N. _____	}	N. _____	}
G. sui, <i>of himself, of herself, of itself</i> ,		G. sui, <i>of themselves</i> .	
D. sibi, <i>to himself, to herself, &amp;c.</i>		D. sibi, <i>to themselves</i> .	
A. se, <i>himself, &amp;c.</i>		A. se, <i>themselves</i> .	
V. _____		V. _____	
A. se, <i>with himself, &amp;c.</i>		A. se, <i>with themselves</i> .	

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrum* and *nostrum*; of *tu*, *vestrum* and *vestrum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly used *nostrum* and *vestrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostrum* and *vestrum* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic* or *is*; as,

*Ille*, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that: or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

*Ipse*, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

*Ipse*, is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego, ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id ; *he, she, it ; or that*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	æ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis, or	eis, &c.	
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. iis, or	eis, &c.	

*Quis, quæ, quod, or quid ?* which, what ? *Or quis ?* who ? *or what man ? quæ ?* who ? *or what woman ? quod or quid ?* what ? *which thing ? or what thing ? thus,*

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, or	quibus, &c.	
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,	A. ques,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	A. queis, or	quibus, &c.	

*Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that ; Or vir qui, the man who or that ;* *scæmina quæ, the woman who or that ; negotium quod, the thing which or that ;* *genit. vir cujus, the man whose or of whom ;* *mulier cujus, the woman whose or of whom ; negotium cujus, the thing of which, seldom whose, &c. thus,*

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis or	quibus, &c.	
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
quo,	qua,	quo.	A. queis, or	quibus, &c.	



The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suius*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *lonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

*Nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

*Meus* hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *qui* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

*Qui* is sometimes used for *quis* : and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes.

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present. *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. *Patris or Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suius*.

#### Compound Latin Pronouns.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthec*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste*, and *hic*. So *illuc*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *meum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum* or *quicum* and *quibuscum*: *ecce*, *ecce*; *ecce*, *ecce*, and sometimes *ecce*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *elium*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egomet*, *tutemet*, *sutemet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet*, *tutimer*. &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet*, in the nom. we say, *tutemet*: *hiacine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c*; of *hic* and *cine*: *Meapte*, *tuapte*, *seapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the abl. fem. and sometimes *meapte*, *tuapte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *hiace*, *hæcce*, *hæce*: *hujate*, *hiace*, *hæce*: of *hic*, and *ce*: whence *hujuscmodi*, *cjuscmodi*, *cjuscmodi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
<i>Idem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>N. idem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
<i>G. ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>E. eorundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,
<i>D. eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> ,	<i>D. eisdem</i> , or	<i>isdem</i> , &c.	
<i>A. eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>A. eosdem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
<i>V. idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>V. iidem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
<i>A. eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>A. eisdem</i> or	<i>isdem</i> , &c.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*:

*Quis* in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam* any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

Nom.			Gen.		
<i>Quisnam</i> ,	<i>quisnam</i> ,	<i>quodnam</i> or	<i>quisnam</i> ,	<i>cuinam</i> ,	
<i>Quispiam</i> ,	<i>quispiam</i> ,	<i>quodpiam</i> or	<i>quispiam</i> ,	<i>cuipiam</i> ,	
<i>Quisquam</i> ,	<i>quisquam</i> ,	<i>quodquam</i> or	<i>quisquam</i> ,	<i>cuiquam</i> ,	
<i>Quisque</i> ,	<i>quisque</i> ,	<i>quodque</i> or	<i>quisque</i> ,	<i>cuique</i> ,	
<i>Quisquis</i> ,	<i>quisquis</i> ,	<i>quidquid</i> or	<i>quisquis</i> ,	<i>cuicui</i> ,	

And so in the other cases. according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has al-

so *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis*, is part last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis* who? *et quis*; also *nequis*, *aliquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
<i>Aliquis</i> , <i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquid</i> or <i>aliquid</i> ,	<i>alicujus</i> ,	<i>alicui</i> ,
<i>Ecquis</i> , <i>ecqua</i> or <i>ecque</i> ,	<i>ecquod</i> or <i>ecquid</i> ,	<i>ecqujus</i> ,	<i>eccui</i> ,
<i>Si quis</i> , <i>si qua</i> ,	<i>si quod</i> or <i>si quid</i> ,	<i>si ejus</i> ,	<i>si cui</i> ,
<i>Ne quis</i> , <i>ne qua</i> ,	<i>ne quod</i> or <i>ne quid</i> ,	<i>ne ejus</i> ,	<i>ne cui</i> ,
<i>Num quis</i> , <i>num qua</i> ,	<i>num quod</i> or <i>num quid</i> ,	<i>num ejus</i> ,	<i>num cui</i> .

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are *ecquismum*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quvis*, any one whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quicunque</i> ,	<i>quæcunque</i> ,	<i>quodcunque</i> ,	<i>cujuscunque</i> ,
<i>Quidam</i> ,	<i>quædam</i> ,	<i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> ,	<i>cujusdam</i> ,
<i>Quilibet</i> ,	<i>quælibet</i> ,	<i>quodlibet</i> , or <i>quidlibet</i> ,	<i>cujuslibet</i> ,
<i>Quvis</i> ,	<i>quævis</i> ,	<i>quodvis</i> , or <i>quidvis</i> ,	<i>cujusvis</i> ,

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *quæis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in classic writers, have sometimes *quæis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. s. being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the s<sup>a</sup> ac case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

## VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy reads. The sun shines. The man loves.

Or, A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word, expresses an affirmation, or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun, or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -*oris*, love; a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive* and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but sim-

ply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo* I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo lītēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a-transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

## The numbers are two; *Singular and Plural.* The persons are three; *First, Second, Third.*

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes or moods* are the various manners of expressing the signification of the verb. The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecrēt redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses or Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-Imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsissem*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [then] be writing; *scripsero*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns, in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

### English Verbs.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied :

#### To LOVE:

##### Active Voice.

##### Indicative Mode.

	Present Time.		Past Time.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I love,		We love,	1. I loved,	We loved,
2. Thou lovest,		Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,	Ye or you loved,
3. He loveth or loves;		They love.	3. He loved;	They loved.

##### Subjunctive Mode.

##### Present Time.

	Sing.	Plur.		
1. I love,		We love,	2. Love thou,	Love ye or love you.
2. Thou love,		Ye or you love,		
3. He love;		They love.		

##### Imperative Mode.

##### Present, To love.

#### Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied.

TO HAVE.

<i>Present Time.</i>		<i>Indicative Mode.</i>		<i>Past Time.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I have,	We have,	1. I had,	We had,		
2. Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,		
3. He hath or has;	They have.	3. He had;	They had.		
<i>Subjunctive Mode.</i>		<i>Imperative Mode.</i>			
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	2. Have thou ;	Have ye.		
1. I have,	We have,				
2. Thou have,	Ye have,				
3. He have;	They have.				
<i>Infinitive Mode.</i>					
<i>Present, To have.</i>					
<i>Participle Present, Having ; Perfect, Had.</i>					

TO BE.

Present Time.		Indicative Mode.		Past Time.	
Sing.	Plur.			Sing.	Plur.
1. I am,	We are,			1. I was,	We were,
2. Thou art,	Ye are,			2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He is ;	They are.			3. He was ;	They were.
Subjunctive Mode.					
Present.				Past.	
Sing.	Plur.			Sing.	Plur.
1. I be,	We be,			1. I were,	We were,
2. Thou be,	Ye be,			2. Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He be ;	They be.			3. He were ;	They were.
Imperative Mode.				Infinitive Mode.	
Sing.	Plur.			Present, To be.	
2. Be thou ;	Be ye.			Participle.	
Present, Being.				Perfect, Been.	
SHALL.				WILL.	
Sing.	Plur.			Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall,	We shall,			1. I will,	We will,
2. Thou shalt,	Ye shall,			2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He shall ;	They shall.			3. He will ;	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *havest* ; *hath*, for *haveth* ; *has*, for *haves* ; and *wilt*, for *willest* ; which last is likewise used from the irregular verb, *to will* ; thus, *I will, thou willest, he willeth, or wills*.

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can* ; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with other auxiliary verbs.

*Would*, *wouldst*, comes from *will* ; and *should*, *shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the Indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do* ; as, *I do love* ; *I did love*. And so in the imperative, *do thou love, do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which being an active verb, has always an accusative after it ; as, *let him love* ; *let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form ; as, *I love*, *I loved* : but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary ; as, *I am loving* just now ; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse ; as, *he hath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle imperfect ; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense ; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.* : *The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

*Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time: *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells; *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "I *shall* go," "you *will* go;" express event only; but "*will* you go?" imports intention: and "*shall* I go;" refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

## IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved*, *lobedent*, we say, *lov'd*, *lovedent*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as, *snatched*, *checkt*, *snapt*, *mixt*, *drivelt*, *past*, *meant*, *felt*, *left*, *berest*, &c. for *snatched*, *checked*, &c. In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not, therefore, commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus, \* are likewise used in the regular form.

### 1. Irregulars by contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation; as, *beat*, *burst*, *cast*, *cost*, *cut*, *hit*, *hurt*, *knit*, *let*, *lift*, \* *light*, \* *put*, *quit*, \* *read*, *rent*, *rid*, *set*, *shed*, *shred*, *shut*, *slit*, *split*, *spread*, *thrust*, *wet*; \* all of which are contracted for *beated*, *bursted*, *casted*, &c.

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead*, *led*; *sweat*, *sweet*; \* *meet*, *met*; *breed*, *bred*; *seed*, *fed*; *speed*, *sped*; *bend*, *bent*; \* *bind*, *lent*; *rend*, *rent*; *send*, *sent*; *spend*, *spent*; *build*, *built*; \* *geld*, *gelt*; \* *gild*, *gilt*; \* *gird*, *girt*; \* *lose*, *lost*.

*Sold*, *told*, *had*, *made*, *fled*, *shod*, *clad*; \* from *sell*, *tell*, *have*, *make*, *flee*, *shoe*, *clothe*; are contracted for *selled*, *telled*, &c. *Stand* has *stood*; *smell*, *smelt*; *dare*, *durst*, in the participle *dared*.

### 2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring*, *brought*; *buy*, *bought*; *catch*, *caught*; *fight*, *fought*; *teach*, *taught*; *think*, *thought*; *seek*, *sought*; *work*, *wrought*.

### 3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in *en*, and from the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Cleave,	clave, or clove,*	cloven.
Awake,	awoke*	(awaked.)	Speak,	spake, or spoke,	spoken.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.	Sware,	sware, or swore	sworn.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.
Take,	took,	taken.	Wear,	ware or wore,	worn.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Heave,	hove.*	hoven.*
Slay,	slew,	slain.	Shear,	shore,	shorn.
Get,	got or got,*	gotten.	Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Help,	(helped.)	holpen.*	Tread,	trod,	trodden.
Melt,	melted,	molten.*	Weave,	wove,	woven.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen.*	Creep,	crepe,*	crept.*
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Bear,	bare, or bore,	borne.			
Break,	brake, or broke,	broken.			

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Seethe,	sod,	sodden.	Hold,	held,	holden.
See,	saw	seen.	Do,	did,	done.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Blow,	blew,	blown.
Chide,	chid,	chidden.	Crow,	crew,	(crowed.)
Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Grow,	grew,	grown.
Slide,	slid,	slidden.	Know,	knew,	known.
Abide,	abode,	(climbed.)	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Climb,	clomb,	driven.	Fly,	flew,	flown.
Drive,	drove,	ridden.	Bake,	(baked.)	baken.*
Ride,	rode,	risen.	Grave,	(graved.)	graven.*
Rise,	rose,	shined.	Hew,	(hewed.)	hewen or hewn.
Shine,	shone,*	striven.*	Lade,	(laded.)	laden.
Strive,	strove,*	smitten.	Load,	(loaded.)	loaden.*
Smite,	smote,	stridden.	Mow,	(mowed.)	mown.*
Stride,	strode,	shriven.	Rive,	(rived.)	riven.
Shrive,	shrove,	thriven.	Saw,	(sawed.)	sawn.*
Thrive,	throve,	written.	Shave,	(shaved.)	shaven.*
Write,	wrote,	stricken or stricken.	Shew,	(shewed.)	shewn.*
Strike,	struck,	bidden.	Show,	(showed.)	shown.
Bid,	bade,	given.	Sow,	(sowed.)	sown.*
Give,	gave,	sitten.	Straw, strew,	(strawed, &c.)	strawn.*
Sit,	sat,	spitten.	or strow,	(washed.)	washen.*
Spit,	spat,	digged.	Wash,	(waxed.)	waxen.*
Dig,	dug,*	lain or lien.	Wax,	(wreathed.)	wreathen.*
Lie,	lay,	chosen.	Wreath,	(writhed.)	writhen.
Choose,	chose,		Write,		

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Stink,	stank or stunk,	stunk.
Cling,	clang or clung,	clung.	String,	strung,	strung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or drunken.	Swim,	swam or swum,	swum.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Swing,	swung,	swung.
Ring,	rang or rung,	rung.	Wring,	wrung,	wrung.
Shrink,	shrank or shrunk,	shrunk.	Bind,	bound,	bound or bounden.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Find,	found,	found.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sunk.	Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sling,	slang or slung,	slung.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Hang,	hung,*	hung.*
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Spring,	sprang or sprung,	sprung.	Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.	Come,	came,	come.
			Run,	ran,	run.
			Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time; thus it is said, *he begun* for *he began*; *he run* for *he ran*; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time; and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written*; *it was wrote*, for *it was written*; *so bore* for *borne*; *chose for chosen*; *bid* for *bidden*; *drove* for *driven*; *broke* for *broken*; *rode* for *ridden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification; as, *go, went, gone, wet, wit* or *wot, wot*; *wis, wist*; *ought, quoth, must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

## LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dare*, to give, which has *d* short, and also its compounds ; thus, *circumdare*, to surround ; *circumdāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

### ACTIVE VOICE.

#### *Indicative Mode.*

#### Present Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Persons:</i>			<i>Plural.</i> <i>Persons.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Conjugation.	1. -o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2. -eo	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it ;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
	4. -io	-is,	-it ;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.

#### Imperfect.

1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

#### Future.

1. -āhe,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2. -ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3. -am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4. -iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

#### *Subjunctive Mode.*

#### Present Tense.

1. -em,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. -eān,	-eās,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3. -am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.



**Imperfect.**

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret ;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret ;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-irent.

**Imperative Mode.**

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a or -āto,	-āto ;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e or -ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-unto.
4.	-i or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-iunto.

**PASSIVE VOICE.****Indicative Mode.****Present Tense.**

1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ītur ;	-īmur,	-īminī,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris or -īre,	-ītur ;	-imur,	-iminī,	-iuntur.

**Imperfect.**

1. -āhar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur ;	-ābāmur,	-ābāminī,	-ābantur.
2. -ēhar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
3. -īhar,	-ībāris or -ībāre,	-ībātur ;	-ībāmur,	-ībāminī,	-ībābantur.
4. -iēhar,	-iēbāris or -iēbāre,	-iēbātur ;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāminī,	-iēbantur.

**Future.**

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -ābēre,	-ābītur ;	-ābīmur,	-ābīminī,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ēbēre,	-ēbītur ;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīminī,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur ;	-iēmur,	-iēminī,	-ientur.

**Subjunctive Mode.****Present Tense.**

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur ;	-iāmur,	-iāminī,	-iantur.

**Imperfect.**

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur ;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -ēre,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
4. -īrer,	-irēris or -irēre,	-irētur ;	-irēmur,	-irēmīni,	-irentur.

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre or -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmīni,	-āntor.
2.	-ēre or -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.
3.	-ēre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmīni,	-untor,
4.	-īre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmīni,	-iuntor.

Observe, Verbs in *to* of the third conjugation have *tunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *tuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *tante* and *tuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the Indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *īssam* and *īssim*; *īssat* and *īssat*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

**ACTIVE VOICE.***Indicative Mode.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Perf.</i>	-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	ērunt or ēre.
<i>Pla.</i>	-eram,	-ēras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Perf.</i>	-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Pla.</i>	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

**SUM** is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

**Principal Parts.**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	
Sum,	fui,	esse,	To be.

*Indicative Mode.***Present Tense. am.**

	Sing.	Plur.
Person.		
1.	Sum, I am,	Sūmus, We are,
2.	Es, Thou art, or you are,	Estis, Ye or you are
3.	Est, He is;	Sunt, They are.

Imperfect. *was.*

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Eram, <i>I was,</i>                  | Erāmus, <i>We were,</i>  |
| 2. Eras, <i>Thou wast, or you were,</i> | Erātis, <i>Ye were,</i>  |
| 3. Erat, <i>He was ;</i>                | Erant, <i>They were.</i> |

Perfect. *have been or was.*

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been,</i>       | Fuimus, <i>We have been,</i>             |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i> | Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i>            |
| 3. Fuit, <i>He hath been ;</i>    | Fuerunt, or -ere, <i>They have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēram, <i>I had been,</i>      | Fuērāmus, <i>We had been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i> | Fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerat, <i>He had been ;</i>    | Fuerant, <i>They had been.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ero, <i>I shall be,</i>     | Erimus, <i>We shall be,</i>  |
| 2. Eris, <i>Thou shalt be,</i> | Eritis, <i>Ye shall be,</i>  |
| 3. Erit, <i>He shall be ;</i>  | Erunt, <i>They shall be.</i> |

## Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be,</i>       | Simus, <i>We may be,</i>  |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i> | Sitis, <i>Ye may be,</i>  |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be ;</i>     | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i>       | Essemus, <i>We might be,</i>  |
| 2. Esset, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essetis, <i>Ye might be.</i>  |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be ;</i>     | Essent, <i>They might be.</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuērim, <i>I may have been,</i>       | Fuērīmus, <i>We may have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou mayest have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He may have been ;</i>     | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been,</i>       | Fuissemus, <i>We might have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been,</i> | Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been ;</i>     | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

Future. *shall have.*

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēro, <i>I shall have been,</i>     | Fuērīmus, <i>We shall have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou shalt have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye shall have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He shall have been,</i>   | Fuerint, <i>They shall have been.</i> |

*Imperative Mode.*

2. Es *vel* esto, *Bethou,*      Este *vel* estôte, *Be ye,*  
 3. Esto,      *Let him be;*      Sunt,      *Let them be.*

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pres.* Esse, *To be.*

*Perf.* Fuisse, *To have been.*

*Fut.* Esse futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

*Participle.*

*Future.* Futurus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So, *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse: as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu es*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## Principal Parts.

<i>Present Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Amo,	amavi,	amatum,	amare, <i>To love.</i>

*Indicative Mode.*

*Present Tense.* love, do love, or am loving.

Sing.	1. A M-o,	I love,
	2. Am-as,	Thou lovest, or you love,
	3. Am-at,	He loveth, or he loves;
Plur.	1. Am-amus,	We love,
	2. Am-atis,	Ye or you love,
	3. Am-ant,	They love.

**Imperfect.** *loved, did love, or was loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved,</i>
2. Am-abas,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
3. Am-abat,	<i>He loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamus,	<i>We loved,</i>
2. Am-abatis,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
3. Am-abant,	<i>They loved.</i>

**Perfect.** *loved, have loved, or did love.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
3. Am-avit,	<i>He hath loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvīmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
2. Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
3. Am-avērunt, v. avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

**Plu-perfect.** *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
2. Am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
3. Am-averat,	<i>He had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averamus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
2. Am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
3. Am-averant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

**Future.** *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
2. Am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
3. Am-abit,	<i>He shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
2. Am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love.</i>
3. Am-abunt,	<i>They shall love.</i>

**Subjunctive Mode.**

**Present Tense.** *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
2. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayst love,</i>
3. Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
2. Am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
3. Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ūrem,	<i>I might love,</i>
2. Am-ares,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
3. Am-aret,	<i>He might love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
2. Am-aretis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
3. Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

Perfect. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
3. Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-avissemus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avissetis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3. Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

## Imperative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3. Am-ato,	<i>Let him love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> am-atôte,	<i>Love ye or do ye love,</i>
3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

## Infinitive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

*Participle.*

<i>Present</i> , Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Future</i> , Am-aturus, -a, um,	<i>About to love.</i>

*Gerunds.*

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

*Supine.*

<i>Former.</i> Am-ātum,	<i>To love,</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Am-atu,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Amor,	amātus,	amāri, to be loved.

*Indicative Mode.**Present Tense. am.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
2. Am-āris, vel -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
3. Am-atur,	<i>He is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-amur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
2. Am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
3. Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

*Imperfect. was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
2. Am-abāris vel -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
3. Am-abatur,	<i>He was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
2. Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye were loved,</i>
3. Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

*Perfect. am ; have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sum, vel fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus es, v. fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
3. Amatus est, v. fuit,	<i>He hath been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati sumus, v. fuimus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
2. Amati estis, v. fuistis,	<i>Ye have been loved,</i>
3. Amati sunt, fuerunt, v. fuerē,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

*Perf.* Doc-uërim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerîmus, -ueritûs, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Doc-uisssem, -uissēs, -uisset; -uissēmûs, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Doc-uëro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerîmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

### Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-e <i>vel</i> -ëto,	-ëto;	-ëte <i>vel</i> etote,	-ento.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ëre.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doct-um.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Doct-ûrus.	Doc-endi,	2. Doct-u.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse docturus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

### PASSIVE VOICE.

Döceor, doctus, döcëri, *To be taught.*

### Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eor,	-ëris, <i>vel</i> -ëre,	-etur; -emur,	-emîni, -entur.
<i>Imp.</i> Doc-ëhar,	-ëhâris, <i>vel</i> -ehare,	-ebatur; -ebamur,	-ebamîni, -ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sum <i>vel</i> fui, doctus es <i>vel</i> fuisti, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus eram <i>v.</i> fueram, doctus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ebor,	-ëbëris, <i>vel</i> -ebere,	-ebîtur; -ebimur,	-ebimîni, -ebuntur.

### Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ear,	-eâris, <i>vel</i> -care,	-eatur; -eamur,	-eamîni, -eantur.
<i>Imp.</i> Doc ere,	-erëris, <i>vel</i> erëre,	-eretur; -eremur,	-eremîni, -erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim, doctus sis <i>vel</i> fueris, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus essem <i>v.</i> fuisssem, doctus esses <i>v.</i> fuissēs, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.			

### Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ëre <i>vel</i> -ëtor;	-ëtor;	-entûni,	-entor.

### Infinitive.

### Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eri,	<i>Perf.</i> Doct-us, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse <i>vel</i> fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Doctum iri.	



## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lēctum, lēgēre, To read.

## Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pres. <b>L</b>	Eg-o,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
Imp. Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
Perf. Lēg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis,	-ērunt,	-ēre.
Plu. Lēg-ēram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.	
Fut. Lēg-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.	

## Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Lēg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp. Lēg-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ērēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Perf. Lēg-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu. Lēg-issem,	-issem,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut. Lēg-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

## Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Lēg-e, vel-īto,	-īto;	īte, vel-ītōte,	-unto.	

## Infinitive.

## Participles.

## Gerunds.

## Supines.

Pres. Lēg-ēre,	Pr. Leg-ens.	Lēg-endum.	1. Lect-um.
Perf. Lēg-isse,	Fut. Lect-ūrus.	Lēg-endi.	2. Lect-u.
Fut. Esse lectūrus,	-a, -um,	Lēg-endo, &c.	
Fuisse lectūrus,	-a, -um.		

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi, To be read.

## Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			Plur.		
Pres. Leg-or,	-ēris,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īminī,	-untur.	
Imp. Leg-ēbar,	-ēbaris,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantor.	
Perf. Lectus sum vel fui,	lectus es vel fuisti, &c.					
Plu. Lectus eram vel fueram,	lectus eras vel fueras, &c.					
Fut. Leg-ar,	-ēris,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.	

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ar,	-āre, vel -āre,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
<i>Imp.</i> Lēg-ērer,	-erēris, vel erāre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lectus sim vel fuerim, lectus sis vel fueris, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i>	Lectus essem v. fuisset, lectus esses v. fuisses, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i>	Lectus fuero, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.				

*Imperative Mode.*

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ēre, vel -itor,	-itor;	-imīni,	-untor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-i,	<i>Perf.</i> Lect-us, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse v. fuisse lectus, -a, -um.	<i>Fut.</i> Lēg-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Lectum iri.	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire, To hear.

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i> <b>A</b> Ud-io,	-is,	-it;	-imur,	-itis,	-iunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamur,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	-ivērunt, vel -ivēro.
<i>Plu.</i> Aud-ivēram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-iretis,	-irent.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
<i>Plu.</i> Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

*Imperative Mode.*

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-i, vel -ito;	-ito;	-ite, vel itōte,	-iunto.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-ire.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.	1. Auditum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Auditū.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditurus, -a, -um,		Aud-iendo, &c.	
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior,      Auditus,      Audiri,      To be heard:

*Indicative Mode.*

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-ior,	-iris, vel -ire,	-itur;	-imur, -imini, -iuntur.
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-ībar,	-iebaris, vel -iebare,	-iebatur;	-iebamur, -iebamini, -iebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sum vel fui, Auditus es v. fuisti, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus eram v. fueram, Auditus eras v. fueras, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iar,	-ieris, vel -iere,	-ietur;	-iemur, -iemini, -ientur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Aud-iar,	-iaris, vel -iare,	-iatur;	-iamur, -iamini, -iantur.
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-īer,	-ieris, vel -irere,	-iretur;	-iremur, -iremini, -irentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sim vel fuerim, Auditus sis v. fueris, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus essem v. fuissem, Auditus esses v. fuisses, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Auditus fuero, Auditus fueris, &c.			

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-ire, vel -itor,	-itor;	-imini,	-iuntor.	

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iri,	<i>Per.</i> Audit-us, -a, -um.
<i>Per.</i> Esse v. fuisse audit-us, -a, -um,	<i>Fut.</i> Audiend-us, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Audit-um iri.	

## FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are form'd from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *be*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

*Am-o*, *-em*; *Am-avi*, *-eram*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-issee*; *Amat-um*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *Am-are*, *-abam*, *-abo*, *-urem*, *a*, *-aus*, *andum*, *di*, *do*; *-endus*.  
*Doc-eo*, *-eram*; *Doc-ui*, *-ueram*, &c.; *Doct-um*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *Doc-ere*, *-ebam*, *-ebo*, *-erem*, *-e*, *-ens*, *-endum*, *di*, *do*, *-endus*.  
*Leg-o*, *-am*; *Leg-i*, *-eram*, &c.; *Lect-um*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *Leg-ere*, *-ebam*, *-erem*, *-e*, *-ens*, *-endum*, &c.  
*Aud-io*, *-iam*; *Aud-ivi*, *-iveram*, &c.; *Audit-um*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *Aud-ire*, *-ebam*, *-irem*, *-i*, *-iens*, *-endum*, *di*, *do*, *-endus*.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*, as, *Cap-io*, *-iam*; *Cep-i*, *-eram*, &c.; *Capt-um*, *-u*, &c.; *Cap-ere*, *-ebam*, *-erem*, *-e*, *-iens*, *-endum*, *di*, *do*, *-endus*.  
 The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *a*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

*Am-o*, *-ābam*, *-ābo*, *-em*, *-ārem*, *-a* or *-āto*, *-āre*, *-ans*, *-andum*, *di*, *do*, &c. *-endus*:  
*Amav-i*, *-ēram*, *-ēiun*, *-issem*, *-ēro*, *-issee*; *Amāt-um*, *-us*, *-ūrus*.  
 So *Doc-eo*, *-ēbam*, *-ēbo*, *-eam*, *-ērem*, *-e* or *-eto*, *-ēre*, *-e* as, *-endum*, *di*, &c. *-endus*; *Doc-*, *-ēram*, *-ērim*, *-issem*, *-ēro*, *-issee*; *Doct-um*, *-us*, *-ūrus*.  
*Lēg-o*, *-ēbam*, *-am*, *-es*, *-et*, &c. *-am*, *-as*, *-at*, &c. *-ērem*, *-e*, or *-ito*, *-ēre*, *-ens*, *-endum*, &c. *-endus*:  
*Lēg-i*, *-ēram*, &c. *Lect-um*, *-us*, *-urus*:  
*Cāp-io*, *-ēbam*, *-iam*, *-ies*, *-iet*, &c. *-iam*, *-ias*, &c. *-ērem*, *-e* or *-ito*, *-ēre*, *-iens*, *-endum*, *-endus*; *Cēp-i*, *-ēram*, &c. *Capt-um*, *-us*, *-ūrus*.  
*Aud-io*, *-ēbam*, &c. *Aud-i-i*, *-ēram*, &c.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ere*, or *-ire*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

#### Signification of the Tenses in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love or was loving, &c.

*Amavi*, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.  
 In like manner in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

*Indicative Mode.*

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

*Amatus fui*, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

*Amatus fueram*, I had been loved.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

*Amatus fuero*, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

*Amatus fuissem*, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive: thus,

*Amaturus sum*, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love.

We chiefly use this form when some purpose or intention is signified.

*Amatus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied: thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabim*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *am-er*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amaber*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligam, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an stelem?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teueri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te superbi, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare doctorem; Et preferre, soror, potero*, for *potuissem* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Clitus crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauerit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive: and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius, for fuisset*, II. *Invidiæ dilapsa erat*, for *fuit*, et, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venissi*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephenum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare, for triumpha urum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuperet, for occupet*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet*, or *fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *vadeo*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis, meque, curabis*, farewell, and love me, Cic.

The present time and the preter-in-perfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them; thus,

*Dicit me scribere* ; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.  
*Dixit me scribere* ; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.  
*Dicit me scripsisse* ; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.  
*Dixit me scripsisse* ; he said that I had written.  
*Dicit me scrip-urum esse* ; he says that I will write.  
*Dixit me scrip-urum esse* ; he said that we would write.  
*Dicit nos scripturos fuisse* ; he says that we would have written.  
*Dixit literas scribi* ; he says that letters are written, writing, a writing, or in writing.  
*Dixit literas scribi* ; he said that letters were writing, or written.  
*Dicit literas scriptas esse* ; he says that letters are or were written.  
*Dixit literas scriptas fuisse* ; he says that letters have been written.  
*Dixit literas scriptas fuisse* ; he said that letters had been written.  
*Dicit literas scrip-tum iri* ; he says that letters will be written.  
*Dixit literas scrip-tum iri* ; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scrip-tum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution ; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*. — *ut literas scriban tur* ; I know that they will write. — that letters will be written. *Scribo fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*, — *ut literas scriberentur* ; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scribo futurum fuisse, ut literas scriberentur* ; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed :

*Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. literas* ; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.  
*Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c.* I must have written, &c.  
*Scribendum erit mihi* ; I shall be obliged to write.  
*Scio scribendum esse mihi literas* ; I know that I must write letters.  
 — *Scribendum fuisse mihi* ; — that I must have written.  
*Dixit scribendum fore mihi* ; He said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *du*.

*Literas sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or a me, puero, &c.* ; Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literas scribendæ, erunt, fuerunt, erunt, &c. Si literas scribendæ sint, erunt, forent, &c. Scio literas scribendas esse* ; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scribo literas scribendas fuisse* ; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed ; as in English by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum* ; as, *Sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving ; *eram amans*, for *amabam*, &c. *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner ; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression, however does not often occur.

## FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

### GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner ; as,

*Voco, vocavi, vocatum*, to call : so, *revoce, revocaui, revocatum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable ; as, *pello, pepuli*, to beat ; *repello, repuli*, never *repēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule ; thus, *ēdisco, ēdidici*, to get by heart ; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand : so, *præcurro, præcurri* ; *repungo, repūpugi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēci, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēci, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sapio, salio*, and *statuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

### SPECIAL RULES.

#### First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *avi* in the preterite, and *atum* in the supine; as,

*creo, creāvi, creatum*, to create; *paro, parāvi, paratum*, to prepare.—So,

<i>Abundo</i> , to abound.	<i>Centurio</i> , & <i>concenturio</i> , to divide into companies.	<i>Dedico</i> , to dedicate.
<i>Accuso</i> , to charge with a crime.	<i>Certo</i> , to strive, to fight.	<i>Dilecto</i> , to delight.
<i>Adumbrō</i> , to shade, to deli- neate.	<i>Cesso</i> , to cease.	<i>Delibero</i> , to deliberate.
<i>Edifico</i> , to build.	<i>Clamo</i> , to cry.	<i>Delitro</i> , to trace, to chink out.
<i>Estimo</i> , to value.	<i>Claudio</i> , to limp.	<i>Desiro</i> , to want, to rave.
<i>Ambulo</i> , to walk.	<i>Collo</i> , to curdle.	<i>Delumbo</i> , to weaken.
<i>Amplo</i> , to enlarge, to put off a cause.	<i>Cogito</i> , to think.	<i>Desidero</i> , to desire.
<i>Almo</i> , to encourage.	<i>Collineo</i> , to aim at, to hit the mark.	<i>Desolo</i> , to lay wastes.
<i>Anticipo</i> , to anticipate.	<i>Colo</i> , to strain.	<i>Destino</i> , to destine.
<i>Antiquo</i> , i. e. <i>antiqua probo</i> , to reject a law.	<i>Communico</i> , to impart.	<i>Dico</i> , to dedicate.
<i>Appello</i> , to call.	<i>Comparo</i> , to compare.	<i>Discepo</i> , to disperse.
<i>Appropinquo</i> , to approach.	<i>Compensō</i> , to make amends.	<i>Discolo</i> , to hew or cut.
<i>Aristo</i> , to push like a ram.	<i>Comprehendo</i> , to put off a cause to the day after to- morrow.	<i>Dono</i> , to present.
<i>Apro</i> , to fit.	<i>Compilo</i> , to pile up, to pil- lage. [pile.]	<i>Duplico</i> , to double.
<i>Aro</i> , to plough.	<i>Concello</i> , to gain, to recon- quer.	<i>Educo</i> , to bring up.
<i>Ascio</i> , to cut or hew.	<i>Concedo</i> , to agree.	<i>Ejulo</i> , to wail, to weep.
<i>Asserō</i> , to affirm.	<i>Confuto</i> , refuto, to dis- prove.	<i>Emancipo</i> , to free a man from the power of his fa- ther.
<i>Ausulto</i> , to listen.	<i>Conge</i> , to freeze.	<i>Emendo</i> , to amend.
<i>Aueiro</i> , to engage for ser- vice.	<i>Considero</i> , to consider.	<i>Enuelco</i> , to take out the ker- nel, to explain.
<i>Autumo</i> , to suppose.	<i>Contamino</i> , to pollute.	<i>Enudo</i> , to unknot, to explain.
<i>Averrunco</i> , to avert.	<i>Copulo</i> , to couple.	<i>Equito</i> , to ride.
<i>Bajulo</i> , to carry.	<i>Corruo</i> , to wrinkle.	<i>Errō</i> , to wander.
<i>Balo</i> , to beat.	<i>Corrusco</i> , to brandish.	<i>Examino</i> , to examine, to try.
<i>Basio</i> , to kiss.	<i>Cremo</i> , to burn.	<i>Exanilo</i> , to empty, to endure.
<i>Bello</i> , to war.	<i>Creo</i> , to create.	<i>Exaro</i> , to plough up, to scrawl, to write fast.
<i>Beo</i> , to bless.	<i>Crispo</i> , to stiff.	<i>Exentero</i> , to take out the guts.
<i>Blatō</i> , to babble.	<i>Crucio</i> , to torment.	<i>Existimō</i> , to think.
<i>Boo</i> , to bellow.	<i>Cura</i> , to care.	<i>Exploro</i> , to search.
<i>Bulio</i> , to hoot like an owl.	<i>Damno</i> , to condemn.	<i>Extrico</i> , to disentangle.
<i>Chao</i> , to go to stool.	<i>Declino</i> , to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.	<i>Fabulo</i> , to frame.
<i>Cæco</i> , to blind or dazzle.	<i>Declaro</i> , to declare.	<i>Fascino</i> , to bewitch.
<i>Cælo</i> , to carve.	<i>Decollo</i> , to loose a thing from off the neck, to be- head.	<i>Fatigo</i> , to weary.
<i>Calceo</i> , to put on shoes, to shoe.	<i>Decorō</i> , to adorn.	<i>Fermento</i> , to leaven with dough, to ferment with.
<i>Calcitra</i> , to kick.	<i>Deeuro</i> , to divide soldiers into files or small compa- nies, or citizens into wards.	<i>Festino</i> , to hasten.
<i>Calcio</i> , to tread.		<i>Eligito</i> , to dun.
<i>Cæligo</i> , to be dark or dim- sighted.		<i>Flagro</i> , to be on fire.
<i>Carmino</i> , to card wool.		<i>Flo</i> , to blow.
<i>Custigo</i> , to chastise.		<i>Focillo</i> , refocillo, to cherish, to warm.
<i>Cutro</i> , to cut off.		<i>Fodico</i> , to pierce or push.
<i>Celebro</i> , to make famous.		
<i>Celo</i> , to conceal.		

<b>Fôro</b> , to bore.	<b>Mão</b> , to flow.	<b>Prôtelo</b> , to chase away.
<b>Fortino</b> , to prosper.	<b>Mãuro</b> , to hasten.	<b>Público</b> , to publish, to den-
<b>Frango</b> , to smell sweetly.	<b>Médico</b> , & -or, to cure.	<b>fiscate.</b>
<b>Fraudo</b> , to defraud.	<b>Mêmoro</b> , to tell.	<b>Pugno</b> , to fight.
<b>Fria</b> , to crumble.	<b>Moa</b> , to go or pass.	<b>Pallão</b> , to bud.
<b>Frustrô</b> , & -or, to disappoint.	<b>Mêrulo</b> , & -or, to sleep at noon.	<b>Purgo</b> , to cleanse.
<b>Fûco</b> , to colour, to paint.	<b>Migro</b> , to remove.	<b>Pûto</b> , to think.
<b>Fûgo</b> , to put to flight.	<b>Milito</b> , to be a soldier.	<b>Quadro</b> , to square.
<b>Fuêdo</b> , to sound.	<b>Ministro</b> , to serve.	<b>Rêcôpêro</b> , to recover.
<b>Gênêro</b> , to beget.	<b>Mitigo</b> , to pacify.	<b>Rêcûso</b> , to refuse.
<b>Grâvo</b> , to weigh down.	<b>Monstro</b> , to show or tell.	<b>Refrigêro</b> , to cool.
<b>Gûberno</b> , to govern.	<b>Muleo</b> , to beat.	<b>Rêgêla</b> , to thaw.
<b>Gusto</b> , to taste.	<b>Multo</b> , & -cto, to fine.	<b>Rêpáro</b> , to repair.
<b>Hábito</b> , to dwell.	<b>Musso</b> , & -to, to mutter.	<b>Rêprêsentô</b> , to resemble, to show; to pay money in advance.
<b>Hásito</b> , to doubt.	<b>Mitillo</b> , to maim.	<b>Rêtêro</b> , to unlock.
<b>Hâlo</b> , to brute.	<b>Mûto</b> , to change.	<b>Riga</b> , to water.
<b>Hip</b> , to gape.	<b>Narro</b> , to tell.	<b>Rôgo</b> , to ask.
<b>Hônôro</b> , to honour.	<b>Nausco</b> , to be sea-sick.	<b>Rôto</b> , to wheel about.
<b>Jaeto</b> , to boast, to brag.	<b>Nâvigo</b> , to sail.	<b>Ructo</b> , & -or, to belch.
<b>Jento</b> , to breakfast.	<b>Nâvo</b> , to act vigorously.	<b>Rûmão</b> , to chew the cud.
<b>Ignôro</b> , to be ignorant.	<b>Nêgo</b> , to deny.	<b>Rûneo</b> , to weed.
<b>Immôlo</b> , to sacrifice.	<b>Nêto</b> , to wink.	<b>Sacro</b> , to consecrate.
<b>Impêro</b> , to command.	<b>Nêto</b> , to swim.	<b>Sâcino</b> , to fatten.
<b>Impetro</b> , to obtain.	<b>Nôdo</b> , to knot, rare act.	<b>Sâlvô</b> , to spit or slayer.
<b>Inauro</b> , to gild.	<b>Nômo</b> , to name.	<b>Saito</b> , to dance.
<b>Inchoo</b> , to begin.	<b>Nôto</b> , to mark.	<b>Sâltô</b> , to salute.
<b>Inclino</b> , to incline.	<b>Nôvo</b> , to renew.	<b>Sâno</b> , to heel.
<b>Indâgo</b> , to trace out.	<b>Nûdo</b> , to make bare.	<b>Sâo</b> , to satisfy.
<b>Indico</b> , to show.	<b>Nûmero</b> , to count.	<b>Sâltûro</b> , to fill, to glut.
<b>Inquino</b> , to pollute.	<b>Nuncupo</b> , to call.	<b>Schâllêco</b> , to lance or open.
<b>Inspecio</b> , to sharpen as the end.	<b>Nuntio</b> , to tell.	<b>Serco</b> , to hawk or catch in spitting.
<b>Instauro</b> , to renew.	<b>Nûto</b> , to nod.	<b>Sêcundo</b> , to prosper.
<b>Instigo</b> , to push on.	<b>Obacero</b> , to beseech.	<b>Sêdo</b> , to allay.
<b>Intercalo</b> , to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.	<b>Obêro</b> , to lack.	<b>Sêpara</b> , to sever.
<b>Intro</b> , to enter.	<b>Obtempêro</b> , to obey.	<b>Servo</b> , to keep.
<b>Invito</b> , to invite.	<b>Obtrunco</b> , to kill.	<b>Sibilo</b> , to hiss.
<b>Irrâda</b> , to shine upon.	<b>Qutro</b> , to stop up.	<b>Siceo</b> , to dry.
<b>Irrito</b> , to provoke.	<b>Oceo</b> , to harrow.	<b>Signo</b> , to mark out.
<b>Itêro</b> , to do again.	<b>Osôro</b> , to perfume.	<b>Sig ifico</b> , to mean, to give notice.
<b>Jûbilo</b> , to shout for joy.	<b>Onêro</b> , to load.	<b>Symôlo</b> , to pretend.
<b>Jurgo</b> , & -or, to chide or scold.	<b>Opto</b> , to wish.	<b>Schêco</b> , to match, to join.
<b>Jûro</b> , to swear.	<b>Oibo</b> , to depite.	<b>Sôlêllo</b> , to stir up, to dis-
<b>Lâbêro</b> , to labour.	<b>Ordino</b> , to put in order.	<b>quiet.</b>
<b>Lâcêro</b> , to tear.	<b>Oino</b> , to deck, to adorn.	<b>Somnio</b> , to dream.
<b>Lachrymo</b> , & -or, to weep.	<b>Oio</b> , to beg.	<b>Specto</b> , to behold.
<b>Lævigô</b> , to smooth or polish.	<b>Oselto</b> , & -or, to yawn, to be listless.	<b>Spêo</b> , to hope.
<b>Lallo</b> , to sing as a nurse to a child.	<b>Pêco</b> , to subdue.	<b>Spîro</b> , to breathe.
<b>Lânio</b> , to tear.	<b>Palpito</b> , to beat or throb.	<b>Spôlio</b> , to rob.
<b>Latro</b> , to bark.	<b>Palpo</b> , to stroke, to gain by flattery.	<b>Spûmo</b> , to foam.
<b>Laxo</b> , to loose.	<b>Pandito</b> , to perform funeral rites, to revenge.	<b>Stugno</b> , to stand as water.
<b>Lêgo</b> , to send as an ambassador, to bequeath.	<b>Pâro</b> , to prepare.	<b>Sûllo</b> , to drop.
<b>Lêvo</b> , to lighten.	<b>Patro</b> , to perform.	<b>Sûmlo</b> , to goad, to vex.
<b>Lîbo</b> , to taste.	<b>Pecco</b> , to sin.	<b>Sûpo</b> , to stuff, to guard.
<b>Libêro</b> , to free.	<b>Pênêtro</b> , to pierce.	<b>Strangulo</b> , to strangle.
<b>Ligo</b> , to bind.	<b>Persêvêro</b> , to continue constant.	<b>Strigo</b> , to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen or horses do.
<b>Liquo</b> , to melt.	<b>Pio</b> , to expiate.	<b>Sûdo</b> , to sweat.
<b>Litigo</b> , to quarrel.	<b>Plâco</b> , to appease.	<b>Suffêco</b> , to strangle.
<b>Lito</b> , to appease by sacrifice.	<b>Plôro</b> , to bewail.	<b>Suffêco</b> , to burn in case.
<b>Lâcubro</b> , to sit up late to study.	<b>Porto</b> , to carry.	<b>Sugillo</b> , to taunt or jeer.
<b>Lustro</b> , to survey.	<b>Postûlo</b> , to demand.	<b>Sulco</b> , to furrow.
<b>Luxo</b> , to put out of joint.	<b>Privo</b> , to deprive.	<b>Sûpêro</b> , to overcome.
<b>Mactô</b> , to slay, to sacrifice.	<b>Prôbo</b> , to approve.	<b>Suppêdîto</b> , to afford.
<b>Mando</b> , to command, to permit.	<b>Præcastino</b> , to delay.	<b>Sûsurro</b> , to whisper.
	<b>Profligo</b> , to rout.	<b>Tardo</b> , to stop.
	<b>Prômulo</b> , to publish.	<b>Taxo</b> , to rate, reprove.
	<b>Propâgo</b> , to propagate.	<b>Têmêro</b> , to defile.
	<b>Prôpêro</b> , to hasten.	<b>Tempêro</b> , to temper.
	<b>Propino</b> , to drink to.	<b>Tênuo</b> , to make small.



Tērebro, to bore.  
Termino, to bound.  
Tūllo, to tickle.  
Tūtūbo, to stagger.  
Tūlēro, to bear.  
Trāno, to swim over.  
Triphūdo, to caper.  
Triumpho, to triumph.  
Trucidō, to kill.  
Turbo, to disturb.  
Ullō, to howl.  
Umbro, to shade.

Vācillo, to waver.  
Vāco, to want, to be at leisure.  
Vasto, to lay waste.  
Vellico, to pluck, twitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.  
Vēlo, to cover.  
Ventillo, to fan.  
Verbēro, to whip.  
Vestigo, to search for.  
Vibro, to brandish, to shake.  
Viduo, to deprive.

Vigilo, to watch.  
Vindico, to claim, to revenge.  
Violo, to violate.  
Vito, to spoil.  
Vito, to shun.  
Vitupēro, to blame.  
Vocō, to call.  
Volo, to fly.  
Voro, to devour.  
Vulgo, to spread abroad.  
Vulnēro, to wound.

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, to give: *sē, venundo*, to sell; *circundo*, to surround; *pessundo*, to overthrow; *satisdo*, to give surety; *venundēdi, venundātum, venundāre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

*Sto, stēti, statum*, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti, stītum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstīti, præstītum*, or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvātum*, to wash.

*Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum*, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

*Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum*, to help; fut. part. *juvaturus*. So *ad-jūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbītum*, to lie. So; *ac-, ex-, oc-, rē-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

*Dōmo, dōmui, dōmītum*, to subdue. So *ē-, per-dōmo*.

*Sōno, sōnui, sōnītum*, to sound. So *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sōno*.

*Tōno, tōnuī, tōnītum*, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

*Vēto, vētui, vētītum*, to forbid.

*Crēpo, crēpui, crēpītum*, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, rē-crēpo*: *dis-crēpo* has rather *dis-crēpui*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frictum*, to rub. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frīco*. But some of these have also *atum*.

*Sēco, sēcui, sectum*, to cut. So *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sēco*.

*Nēco, nēcui, or nēcavi, nēcātum*, to kill. So *inter-, ē-nēco*: but these have oftener *ectum*; *enectum, internectum*.

*Mīco, mīcui, —* to glitter, to shine. So *inter-, prō-mīco*. *Emīco*, has *ēmīcui, ēmicātum*: *dimīco, dimīcavi, dimīcātum*, rarely *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine;

*labo*, to fall or faint ; *nexo*, to bind ; and *plico*, to fold.

*Plico*, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions, *re-*, *sub-*, has *avi*, *atum* ; as, *duplico*, *duplicavi*, *duplicatum*, to double. So *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *avi* and *atum*, or *ui* and *itum* ; as, *applico*, *applicui*, *applicatum*, or *-avi*, *atum*, to apply. So *im-*, *com-plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui*, *explicitum* ; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicavi*, *explicatum*.

### Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum* ; as, *habeo*, *habui*, *habutum*, to have. So,

*Adhibeo*, to admit, to use.

*Cohibeo*, *inhibeo*, to restrain.

*Exhibeo*, to show, to give.

*Pœrhibeo*, to say to give out.

*Prohibeo*, to hinder.

*Pœsthabeo*, to value less.

*Præbeo*, to afford.

*Rêdhibeo*, to return, or take back a thing

that was sold for some fault.

*Dêbeo*, to owe.

*Mêreco*, to deserve : *Com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *mêreco*, or *mereor*.

*Môneco*, to admonish : *Ad-*, *com-*, *præ-môneco*.

*Terreo*, to terrify : *Ab-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *terreo*

*Diribeo*, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine ; as, *areo*, *ârui*, to be dry. So,

*Acce*, & *-reo*, to be sour.

*Albeo*, to be white.

*Candeo*, to be white.

*Callo*, to be hard.

*Cilneo*, to be hoary.

*Cilatro*, to be bright.

*Egeo*, *indigeo*, to want.

*Emineo*, to stand above others

*Flaeceo*, to wither.

*Floréo*, to flourish.

*Fœtro*, to stink.

*Freudeo*, to gnash the teeth.

*Frondeo*, to bear leaves.

*Horreo*, to be rough.

*Hûmeo*, to be wet.

*Immineo*, to hang over.

*Languéo*, to languish.

*Liquéo*, *lieni*, to melt, to be clear.

*Mheeo*, to be lean.

*Mâdeo*, to be wet.

*Marceo*, to wither.

*Mûceo*, to be mouldy.

*Nitéo*, to shine.

*Palleo*, to be pale.

*Pâteo*, to be open.

*Pâteo*, to stink.

*Putreo*, to rot.

*Ranceo*, to be mouldy.

*Rigeo*, to be stiff.

*Rûbeo*, to be red.

*Squaleo*, to be foul.

*Soudeo*, to be nasty.

*Stûdeo*, to savour.

*Stûpeo*, to be amazed.

*Splendeo*, to shine.

*Torpeo*, to be benumbed.

*Tûmeo*, to swell.

*Vigreo*, to be strong.

*Virco*, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated : *Valeo*, to be in health ; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-valeo* : *Plâceo*, to please ; and *com-*, *per-plâceo* : *Displâceo*, to displease : *Câreo*, to want : *Pâreo*, to appear, to obey ; and *ar-*, *com-pâreo* : *Jâceo*, to lie ; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jâceo* : *Caleo*, to be warm ; and *côn-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-câleo* : *Nôceo*, to hurt ; *Dôleo*, to be grieved ; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-doleo* : *Côâleo*, to grow together : *Litceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued ; and what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price : *Lâteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine,

*deliteo, inter-, sub-lateo*, as likewise do those of *Taceo, -cui, -cūm*, to be silent; *con-, ob-, rē-ticeo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Ti-meo, -ui*, to fear; *Sileo, -ui*, to conceal; *Arceo, -cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercitum*, to exercise. So *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

*Jūbeo, jussi, jussum*, to order. So *fidē-jūbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

*Sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex, rē-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi, exsorpsi*; *Exsorptum, rēsorptum*, are not in use.

*Dōceo, dōcui, doctum*, to teach. So, *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-dōceo*.

*Misceo, miscui, mistum*, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter-, per-, rē-misceo*.

*Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum*, to stroke, to soothe. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, rē-mulceo*.

*Lūceo, luxi, —* to shine. So *at-, circum-, col-, di-, ē-, il-, inter-, per-, or pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, trans-lūceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

*Prandeo, prandi, pransum*, to dine.

*Video, vidi, visum*, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, rē-video*.

*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum*, to sit. So *as-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sīdeo*: *Circumsīdeo*, or *circumsēdeo*, *supersēdeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sīdeo*, seem to want the supine.

*Strīdeo, strīdi, —* to make a noise.

*Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum*, to hang. So *de-, in-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

*Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum*, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

*Spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum*, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

*Tondeo, tātondi, tonsum*, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi, &c.*

*Rideo, risi, risum*, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

*Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum*, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo*.

*Ardeo, arsi, arsum*, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

*Augco, auxi, auctum*, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augco*.

*Lūgeo, luxi*, — to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lūgeo*.

*Frigeo, frixi*, — to be cold. So *per-, re-frigeo*.

*Tergeo, tersi, tertum*, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

*Mulgeo, mulsī, mulsum* or *mulchum*, to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo*.

*Indulgeo, indulsī, indultum*, to grant, to indulge.

*Urgeo, ursi*, — to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

*Fulgeo, fulsi*, — to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

*Turgeo, tursi*, to swell. *Algeo, alsi*, to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

*Vieo, viēvi, viētum*, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

*Cico, (cīvi) citum*, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cico*. *Civi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

*Fleo, flēvi, flētum*, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo*.

*Compleo, complevi, complētum*, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

*Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum*, to destroy, to blot out.

*Ōleo, to smell*, has *ōlui, ōlitum*. So likewise its compounds, which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus *exōlēo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So *insōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-itum*, to grow into use; *obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo, to abolish*, has *abōlēvi, abōlītum*; and *adōleo, to grow up, to burn*, *adōlēvi, adultum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO*.

*Maneo, mansi, mansum*, to stay. So *per-, re-māneo*.

*Nēo, nēvi, nētum*, to spin. So *per-neo*.

*Tēneo, tēnui, tentum*, to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tineo*. But *attineo, pertineo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstineo*.

*Torqueo, torsi, tortum*, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo*.

*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum*, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo*.

*Torreo, torrui, tostum*, to roast. So *extorreo*.

*Censeo, censui, censum*, to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo*, to review; *succensco*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move; *Foveo, fovi, fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-, re-foveo*. So *vōveo*, to vow or wish, and *dēvōveo*.

*Faveo*, to favour; has *fāvi*, *fautum*; and *caveo*, to be ware of; *cāvi*, *cautum*. So *fra-caveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as *pāveo*, *pāvi*, to be afraid.

*Ferveo*, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbul*. So *de-*, *cf-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-ferveo*.

*Connīveo*, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *itēco*, to be black and blue; *scāleo*, to abound; *renīdeo*, to shine; *māreo*, to be sorrowful, *āveo*, to desire; *solleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo* to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

### Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

#### IO.

1. *Fācio*, *fēcī*, *factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucri-*, *magni-*, *ārē-*, *cālē-*, *mādē-*, *tēpē-*, *bēnē-*, *mālē-*, *sātis-fācio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio*, *affēcī*, *affectum*. So *con-*, *de-*, *cf-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *fra-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-ficio*. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifico*, *sacrifico*, *terrifico*, *magnifico*; *gratifico*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdifico*, to mock.

*Jācio*, *jēcī*, *jactum*, to throw. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *tra-*, *jicō*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ectum*; as, *aspicio*, *aspexi*, *aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *su-spicio*.

*Allicio*, *allexi*, *allectum*, to allure. So *h-*, *pel-licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *ēlicui*, *ēlictum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, re-, suf-, trans-fōdio*.

*Fūgio, fugi, fugitum*, to fly. So *au-, (for ab-,) con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, prae-, re-, sus-cāpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

*Rāpio, rāpiui, raptum*, to pull, or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, prae-, pro-, sur-rāpio, -rāpiui, -reptum*.

*Sāpio, sāpiui, —*, to savour, to be wise. So *consāpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desāpio*, to be foolish; *resāpio*, to come to one's wits.

*Cūpio, cupīvi, cupitum*, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēpēri, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

*Quātio, quassi, quassum*, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*, as, *concūtio, concussi, concussum*. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, re-per-, suc-cūtio*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

*Arguo, argui, argūtum*, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

*Acuo, Exacuo*, to sharpen.

*Batio, vel battuo*, to beat, to fight, to fence with foil.

*Induo*, to put on clothes.

*Exuo*, to put off clothes.

*Imbuo*, to wet or imbue, to season or instruct.

*Minuo*, to lessen: *Con-, de-, di-, im-minuo*.

*Spuo*, to spit: *Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo*.

*Statuo*, to set or place, to ordain.

*Con-, de-, in-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-statuo*; *Sternuo*, to sneeze.

*Suo*, to sew or stitch, to tack together: *Ac-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, prae-, re-, sus-*

*tribuo*, to give, to divide: *At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo*.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-fluo*.

*Struo, struxi, structum*, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, prae-, sub-, super-struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luttum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo-, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo*.

*Ruo, rui, ruttum*, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *e-, ob-, frō-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail;

*congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the hand; *rēnuo*, to deny; all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

*Bibo, bibi, bibītum*, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bibo*.

Exc. 1. *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scribo*.

*Nūbo, nupsī, nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsī*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbītum*, to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cūbītum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, præ-lambo*.

*Glūbo* and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup.

## CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco*.

*Dūco, duxi, ductum*, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, \*con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco*.

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vinco*.

*Parco, pēserci, parsuam*, seldom *parsi, parsitum* to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

*Ico, īci, ictum*, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

*Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know; fut. part. *nosciturus*. So,

*Dignosco*, to distinguish; *ignosco*, to pardon; also *inter-, per-, præ-nosco*.

*Creseo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow: *Con-, de-, ex-, re-*, and without the supine, *ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suo-, super-creseo*.

*Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum*, to rest: *Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco*.

*Scisco, -ivi, -itum*, to ordain; *ad-, or ascisco*, to take, to associate; *concisco*, to vote, to commit; also *præ-, re-scisco*; *descisco*, to revolt.

*Suesco*, to be accustomed; *As-, con-, de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So *rēcognosco*, to review.

*Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So com-, dē-pasco.*

**Exc. 2.** The following verbs want the supine.

*Disco, didici, to learn. So ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, prae-disco, didici.*

*Posco, pōposci, to demand. So ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco.*

*Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So dispesco, dispescui, to separate.*

**Exc. 3.** *Glisco, to grow; fatisco, to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine: as, arasco, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, ardesco, to grow hot, arsi, arsum, from ardeo.*

**DO** has *di, sum; as,*

*Scando, scandi, scansum, to climb; ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, to eat. So,*

*Ascendo, to mount.*

*Descendo, to go down.*

*Con-, e-, ex-, in-, trans-*

*cendo.*

*Accendo, to kindle: In-,*

*rascendo.*

*Cudo, to forge, to stamp, or*

*coin: Ex-, in-, per-, pro-,*

*re-cudo.*

*Defendo, to defend.*

*Offendo, to strike against, to offend, to find.*

*Mando, to cheer: Prae-, re-*

*mando.*

*Prehendo, to take hold of:*

*Ap-, com-, de-prehendo.*

**Exc. 1.** *Divido, divisi, divisum, to divide.*

*Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, to shave. So ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, prae-, sub-rādo.*

*Clāudo, clausi, clausum, to close. So circum-, con-, dē-, ex-, in-, inter-, prae-, re-, se-clāudo.*

*Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to clap hands for joy. So ap-, circum-plāudo: also com-, dē-, ex-, sup-plōdo, -plōsi, -plōsum.*

*Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, to play. So ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, prae-, pro-, re-lūdo.*

*Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, to thrust. So ads-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.*

*Lado, lesi, lesum, to hurt. So al-, col-, e-, il-lādo, -lasi, -lāsum.*

*Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw. So ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, prae-rodo.*

*Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have si, sum; as, invādo, invāsi, invāsum, to invade, or fall upon. So circum-, ē-, super-vādo.*

*Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So abs-, ac-, antē-, con-, de-, dē-, ex-, in-, inter-, prae-, pro-, rē-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo.*

**Exc. 2.** *Pando, pandi, passum, and sometimes pansum, to open, to spread. So dis-, ex-, op-, prae-, rē-pando.*



*Cōmēdo, comēdi, comēsum, or comestum, to eat.* But *ēdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsum*; as *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum*.

*Fundo, fūdī, fūsum, to pour fourth.* So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, trans-fundo*.

*Scindo, acīdi, acisum, to cut.* So, *as-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, trans-scindo*.

*Pindo, fīdi, fīsum, to cleave.* So *con-, dis-, in-findo*.

**Exc. 3.** *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum, and sometimes tūsum, to beat.* The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum, to bruise.* So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo*.

*Cado, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall.* The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cīdo, -cīdi, —*: except, *incido, incīdi, incāsum, to fall in; recido, recīdi, recāsum, to fall back; and occīdo, occīdi, occāsum, to fall down*.

*Cado, cēcīdi, casum, to cut, to kill.* The compounds change *a* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accisum, to cut about.* So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cīdo*.

*Tendo, tētēdi, tensum, or tentum, to stretch out.* So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tēdi, -tensum or tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo, to shew; which has commonly ostensum*.

*Pēdo, pēpēdi, pēditum, to break wind backward.* So *ap-pēdo*.

*Pendo, pēpendi, pensam, to weigh.* So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensam*.

**Exc. 4.** The compounds of *do* have *dīdi, and dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum, to hide.* So *ad-, con-, dē-, di-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, trado*: also *decon-, re-condo*: and *coad-, superad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do*. To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum, to believe; vendo, vendīdi, vendītum, to sell.* *Abcondo, to hide, has abcondi, abcondītum, rarely abscondīdi*.

**Exc. 5.** These three want the supine: *strido, strīdi, to creak; rūdo, rūdi, to bray like an ass; and sīdo, sīdi, to sink down.* The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum, to sit down.* So *as-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo*.

*Note, Several compounds of verbs in do and deo, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be*

carefully distinguished; as, *concido, concēdo, concīdo*; *consido* and *consideo*; *conscindo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum*; as,

*Rēgo, rexi, rectum*, to rule, to govern; *dirigo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct; *arigo, & ērigo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up; *corrigo*, to correct; *parrigo*, to stretch out; *subrigo*, to raise up. So,

*Cingo, cinxi, cinctum*, to gird, to surround: *Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, sub-cingo*.

*Fligo, to dash or beat upon*: *Af-, con-, in-fligo*; also *profligo, to rout*, of the first conj.

*Jungo, to join*: *abjungo, to separate*: *Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo*.

*Lingo, to lick*: *de-, ē-lingo*; & *pollingo, to anoint a dead body*.

*Mungo, to wipe, or clean the nose*.

*Emungo, to wipe, to cheat*.

*Plango, to beat, to lament*.

*Stingo, or Stinguo, to dash out, to extinguish*: *Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stinguo*.

*Tēgo, to cover*: *Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tēgo*.

*Tingo, or Tinguo, to dip, or dye*: *Com-, in-tingo*.

*Ungo, or Unguo, to anoint*: *Ex-, in-, per-, in-, per-, super-ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo, to rise, has surrexi, surrectum*. So *ac-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo*.

*Pergo, porrexi, perrectum*, to go forward.

*Stringo, strinxi, strinctum*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo*.

*Fingo, finxi, fictum*, to feign. So *af-, con-, ef-, re-fingo*.

*Pingo, pinxi, pictum*, to paint. So *ap-, de-pingo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum*, to break. So *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum*.

*Āgo, ēgi, actum*, to do, to drive. So *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-igo* and *circum-, per-āgo*: *cōgo, for co-āgo, coēgi, coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo, satāgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdāgo, prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo, for dāgo; dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambāgo, to doubt, to dispute*, also wants the preterite.

*Lēgo, lēgi, lectum*, to gather, to read. So *al-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-lēgo*: also *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-ligo*, which change *i* into *ē*.

*Diligo, to love, has dilexi, dilectum*. So *negligo, to neglect*; and *intelligo, to understand*; but *negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tēgi, tactum*, to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo*; thus *attingo, attēgi, attactum*, &c.

*Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum*, to prick or sting. The com-

pounds have *funxi*; as, *confunngo*, *confunxi*, *confunctum*. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *inter-fungo*: but *refungo*, has *refunxi*, or *repūnāgi*.

*Pango*, *panxi*, *pactum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēpigi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *piago*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*; as, *compāngo*, *compēgi*, *compactum*, to put together. So *im-*, *ob-*, *sup-fingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo*, *sparsi*, *sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-spargo*.

*Mergo*, *merxi*, *mersum*, to dip, or plunge. So *de-*, *e-*, *im-*, *sub-mergo*.

*Tergo*, *tersi*, *tersum*, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergo*.

*Figō*, *fixi*, *fixum*, to fix, or fasten. So *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *trans-figo*.

*Frigo*, *frixi*, *frixum*, or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango*, *clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo*, *ninxi*, to snow; *ango*, *anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie outwards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-*, *de-*, *in-vergo*.

## HO, JO.

1. *Trāho*, *traxi*, *tractum*, to draw. So *abs-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-trāho*.

*Veho*, *vexi*, *vectum*, to carry. So *a-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super trans-vēhō*.

2. *Mejo*, or *mingo*, *mīnxi*, *micturi*, to make water. So *immejo*.

## LO.

1. *Cōlo*, *cōlui*, *cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-*, *circum-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo*, *occului*, *occultum*, to hide.

*Consūlo*, *consului*, *consultum*, to advise or consult.

*Alō*, *ālui*, *alitur*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

*Mōlo*, *molui*, *molitum*, to grind. So *com-*, *e-*, *per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, wants the supine; as, *ante-*, *ex-*, *præ-cello*, *-cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli*, *perculsum*.

*Pello*, *pēfūli*, *pulsūm*, to thrust. So *ap-*, *as-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-pello* ; *apfūli*, *apfūlsūm*, &c.

*Fallo*, *fēfelli*, *falsūm*, to deceive. But *rēfello*, *refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello*, *velli*, or *tulsi*, *vulsūm*, to pull, or pinch. So, *a-*, *con-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-vello*. But *de-*, *di-*, *per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

*Sallo*, *salti*, *salsūm*, to salt. *Psallo*, *psalti*, —, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

*Tollo* to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustuli*, and *sublatum* ; *extollo*, *extrūli*, *elātum* ; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

**MO** has *ui*, *itum* ; as,

*Gēmo*, *gēmui*, *gemitum*, to groan. So, *ad-*, or *ag-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *re-gēmo*.

*Frēmo*, *fremui*, *fremitum*, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-frēmo*.

*Vōmo*, *evōmo*, *-ui*, *-itum*, to vomit, or spew, to cast up.

**Exc. 1.** *Dēmo*, *dempsi*, *demptum*, to take away.

*Promo*, *prompsi*, *promptum*, to bring out. So *de-*, *ex-promo*.

*Sūmo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, to take. So *ab-*, *as-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *transūmo*.

*Cōmo*, *compsi*, *comptum*, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *ψ* ; as, *demsi*, *demtum* ; *sumsi*, *sumtum*, &c.

**Exc. 2.** *Ēmo*, *ēmi*, *emptum* or *emtum*, to buy. So *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-ēmo* and *co-ēmo*, *-emi*, *-emptum* or *emtum*.

*Prēmo*, *pressi*, *pressum*, to press. So *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sup-prēmo*.

*Trēmo*, *trēmui*, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-trēmo*.

**NO.**

1. *Pōno*, *posui*, *pōsitum*, to put, or place. So *ap-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *se-*, *sup-*, *super-*, *superim-*, *trans-pōno*.

*Gigno*, *gēnui*, *gēnitum*, to beget. So *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

*Cāno*, *cēcīni*, *cantum*, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui*, and *centum* ; as, *accīno*, *accīnui*, *accentum*, to sing in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *suc-cīno* ; *oc-cīno*, and *oc-cāno* ; *roc-cīno*, and *re-cāno*. But *occanui*, *recanui*, are not in use.

*Temno*, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi*, *contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi*, *contentum*.

2. *Sperno*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

*Sterno*, *strāvi*, *strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

*Sino*, *sivi*, or *sii*, *situm*, to permit. So *desino*, *desivi*, often *desii*, *desitum*, to leave off.

*Lino*, *lisi*, or *levi*, *litum*, to anoint, or daub. So *ab-*, *cir-*, *cum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-lino*.

*Cerno*, *crēvi*, seldom *crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *se-cerno*.

### PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, to pluck, or pull, to crop, to blame. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *præ-carpo*, *-cerpsi*, *cerptum*.

*Crēpo*, *-psi*, *-ptum*, to steel.

*ex-*, *ex-scalpo*.

*Rēpo*, to creep: *Ad-*, *v-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *dē-*, *e-*, *ir-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-rēpo*, *-psi*, *-ptum*.

*Sculpo*, to grave or carve. So *ex-*, *ex-*.

*sculpo*.

*Serpo*, to creep as a serpent.

*Sculpo*, to scratch, or engrave. So *in-*.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*, *strēpui*, *strēptum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *dē-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

*Cōquo*, *coxi*, *coctum*, to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

*Līquo*, *liqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *litum*; as, *rēlinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dē-rēlinquo*.

### RO.

1. *Quæro*, makes *quæsi*, *quæsītum*, to seek. So *ac-*, *an-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-qui-ro*, *-quisi*, *-quisītum*.

*Tēro*, *trivi*, *tritum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-tēro*.

*Verro*, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *rē-verro*.

*Ūro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, to burn. So *ad-*, *amb-*, *comb-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *sub-ūro*.

*Gēro, gessi, gestum, to carry.* So *ag-, con-, dē-, in-, prō-, rē-, sug-gēro.*

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum, to run.* So *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, prae-, prō-curro,* which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accūcurri, or accūcurri, &c. Circum-, rē-, suc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sēro, sēvi, sātum, to sow.* The compounds which signify, *planting or sowing,* have *sēvi, sītum;* as, *consēro, consēvi, constitum,* to plant together. So *as-, circum-, dē-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, prae-, rē-, sub-, trans-sēro.*

*Sēro, —, to knit,* had anciently *sērui, sertum,* which its compounds still retain; as, *assēro, asserui assertum,* to claim. So *con-, circum-, dē-, dis-, ēdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sēro.*

4. *Fūro, to be mad,* wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sivi, sītum;* as,

*Arcesso; arcessivi, arcessitum, to call, or send for.* So *cāpesso, to take; fācesso, to do, to go away; lūcesso, to provoke.*

Exc. 1. *Viso, visi, —, to go to see, to visit.* So *in-, rē-viso. Incesso, incessi, —, to attack, to seize.*

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsi, depstum, to knead.* So *con-, per-depso.*

*Pinso, pinsui, or pinsi, pinsum, pistum, or pinsitum, to bake.*

## TO.

1. *Flecto, has flexi, flectum, to bow.* So *circum-, de-, in-, rē-, retro-flecto.*

*Plecto, plexi, and plexui, plexum, to plait.* So *implecto.*

*Necto, nexi, and nexui, nexum, to tie, or knit.* So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto.*

*Pecto, pexi, and pexui, pexum, to dress, or comb.* So *de-, ex-, re-pecto.*

2. *Mēto, messui, messum, to reap, mow, or cut down.* So *de-, e-, prae-mēto.*

3. *Pēto, pētivi, pētītum, to seek, to pursue.* So *ap-, com-, ex-, in-, op-, re-, sup-pēto.*

*Mitto, misi, missum, to send.* So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, dē-, dī-, ē-, in-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, prae-, prae-ter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.*

*Verto, verti, versum*, to turn. So *a-*, *ad-*, *animad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *en-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *prætor-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-vertō*.

*Sterto, stertui*, —, to snore. So *de-ster-to*.

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti*, *stātum*; but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti*, *stātum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assisto*, *astīti*, *astītum*, to stand by. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

## VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated :

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad-*, *con-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *super-vivo*.

*Solvo, solvi, solūtum*, to loose. So *absolvo*, to acquit, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *re-solvo*.

*Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum*, to roll. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*) has *texui*, *textum*. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-texo*.

## Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

*Munio, münivi, münitum*, to fortify. So,

*Balbūtio*, to stammer, to  
lisp, to stutter.  
*Bullio*, to boil or bubble.  
*Conditio*, to season.  
*Crēscio*, to creep.  
*Custōdio*, to keep.  
*Dormio*, to sleep.  
*Effūtio*, to babble or blab  
out.  
*Erūdio*, to instruct.  
*Expēdio*, to disentangle, to  
free.  
*Gannio*, to yell, or whine.  
*Garrio*, to prate.  
*Glūtio*, to scallow.  
*Grunnio*, to grunt.  
*Hinnio*, to neigh.  
*Impēdio*, to entangle, to hin-  
der.

*Insānio*, to be mad.  
*Irrētio*, to ensnare.  
*Lascivo*, to be wanton.  
*Lēnio*, to ease, or mitigate.  
*Ligūtio*, to eat deliciously, to  
slubber up.  
*Lippio*, to be dim-sighted.  
*Mollio*, to soften.  
*Mūgio*, to bellow.  
*Mūtio*, to mutter.  
*Nutrio*, to nourish.  
*Obēdio*, to obey.  
*Pāvio*, to beat.  
*Pipio*, to peep like a chicken.  
*Pōllio*, to pollish.  
*Prūtio*, to itch, to tickle.  
*Pūnio*, to punish.  
*Rēdimio*, to bind.  
*Rūgio*, to roar like a lion.

*Sarvio*, to rage.  
*Sāgio*, *præ-sāgio*, to guess, to  
foresee.  
*Sarvio*, to weed, to rake.  
*Scio*, to know.  
*Nescio*, not to know.  
*Scātūtio*, to gush out.  
*Servio*, to serve.  
*Sycio*, to thirst.  
*Sūpio*, to lull asleep.  
*Stābilitio*, to establish.  
*Sūperbio*, to be proud.  
*Suffio*, to perfume.  
*Tinnio*, to tinkle.  
*Tussio*, to cough.  
*Vāgio*, to cry or squeal as a  
child.  
*Vestio*, to clothe.

Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultivi, singultum*, to sob.

*Sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum*, to bury.

*Vēnio, vēni, ventum*, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, re-, sub-, super-vēnio*.

*Vēneo, vēnii, —*, to be sold.

*Salio, sālui, and sālīi, saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *stlui*, sometimes *siliī*, or *stlivi* and *sultum*; as, *transilio, transilui, transilīi*, and *transilivi, transultum*, to leap over. So *ab-, as-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-stlio*.

Exc. 2. *Amicio*, has *amiciui, amictum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

*Vincio, vinxi, vinctum*, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio*.

*Sancio, sanxi, sanctum*; and *sancivi, sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum*, to change money.

*Sēpio, sepsi, septum*, to hedge or inclose. So *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio*.

*Haurio, hausi, haustum*, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-, ex-haurio*.

*Sentio, sensi, sensum*, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *as-, con-, dis-, per-, præ-, sub-sentio*.

*Raucio, rausi, rausum*, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio, sarsi, sartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-, re-sarcio*.

*Farcio, farsī, fartum*, to cram. So *con-fercio, ef-fercio, or ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

*Fulcio, fulsi, fultum*, to prop or uphold. So *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio*, have *pēruī, pertum*; as, *āpērio, apēruī, āpertum*, to open. So *ōpērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio*, has *compēri, compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Rēpērio, repēri, repertum*, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cēcūtio, cēcūtivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcivi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prōstlio, prostlui*, to leap forth. *Fērōcio, ferōcivi*, to be fierce.

*Ferio*, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *rē-fērio*, to strike again.



## DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crimīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old, were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lātor*, *lātātus*, *lātāri*, to rejoice; *vēreor*, *verītus*, *vērēri*, to fear; *fungor*, *functus*, *fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōtior*, *pōtītus*, *pōtīri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus *lātor*, of the first conjugation, like *amōr*:

*Indicative Mode.*

Pres. *Lātor*, I rejoice; *lātāris*, vel -āre, thou rejoicest, &c.  
 Imp. *Lātābar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lātābāris*, &c.  
 Perf. *Lātātus sum* vel *fuī*,\* I have rejoiced, &c.  
 Plu-perf. *Lātātus eram* vel *fuēram*, I had rejoiced, &c.  
 Fut. *Lātābor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lātābēris*, or -abēre, &c.  
*Lātāturus sum*, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

*Subjunctive.*

Pres. *Lāter*, I may rejoice; *lātēris*, or -ere, &c.  
 Imp. *Lātārer*, I might rejoice; *lātārēris*, or -rēre, &c.  
 Perf. *Lātātus sim* vel *fuērim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.  
 Plu-perf. *Lātātus essem* vel *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.  
 Fut. *Lātātus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

*Imperative.*

Pres. *Lātare* vel -itor, rejoice thou: *lātator*, let him rejoice, &c.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. *Lātāri*, to rejoice.  
 Perf. *Lātāturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.  
*Lātāturus fuisse*, to have been about to rejoice.

*Participles.*

Pres. *Lātans*, rejoicing.  
 Perf. *Lātātus*, having rejoiced.  
 Fut. *Lātāturus*, about to rejoice.  
*Lātandus*, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate in the First Conjugation,

*Abōmīnor*, to abhor.  
*Adūlor*, to flatter.

*Emūlor*, to vie with, to  
 envy.

*Altercor*, to dispute, to make  
 a repartee.

\* *Fui*, *fuēram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs, as *sum*, *eram*, &c.

Arbitror, to back in the sun.	Grätulor, to rejoice, to wish one joy.	Patrocinor, to patronize.
Aspernor, to despise.	Grävor, to grudge.	Percontor, to inquire.
Aversor, to dislike.	Häriblor, to conjecture.	Peregrinor, to go abroad.
Auctionor, to sell by auction.	Helluor, to grieve or gormandise, to waste.	Perrilestor, to be in danger.
Auepor, & -o, to hunt after.	Hortor, to encourage.	Pignior, to pledge.
Augūror, & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.	Hallucinor, to speak at random, to err.	Pascor, to fish.
Auspicio, to take an omen, to begin.	Imaginor, to conceive.	Pöphlor, & -o, to lay waste.
Auxilior, to assist.	Imitor, to imitate.	Prædor, to plunder.
Bacchor, to rage, to revel, to riot.	Indignor, to disdain.	Prætor, to fight.
Calumnior, to accuse falsely.	Inficior, to deny.	Prævidor, to wait for.
Chavlor, to scuff.	Insector, to pursue, to invade against.	Prævālicor, to go crooked, to shuffle or perjure.
Caupōnor, to huckster, to retail.	Inshor, to lie in wait.	Præcor, to pray.
Causor, to plead in excuse, to blame.	Interpretor, to explain.	Præcor, to ask, to woo.
Circūlor, to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.	Jacūlor, to dart.	Recordor, to remember.
Comessor, to revel.	Jecor, to jest.	Refrāgor, to be against.
Comitor, to accompany.	Lāmor, to bewail.	Rinor, to search.
Commentor, to meditate on, or write what one is to say.	Lueror, to gain.	Rixor, to scold, or brawl.
Concionor, to harangue.	Luctor, to wrestle.	Rusticor, to dwell in the country.
Conflitor, to struggle.	Māchinor, to contrive.	Serūtor, to search.
Cōnor, to endeavour.	Mēdicor, to cure. [dor.]	Sōlor, to comfort.
Conspicio, to spy, to see.	Mēdior, to must, or purchase.	Spātor, to walk abroad.
Consumptor, to view.	Mētor, to measure.	Spēcūlor, to view, to spy.
Convivor, to feast.	Minor, to threaten.	Stipūlor, to stipulate or agree.
Cornicor, to chatter like a crow.	Miror, to wonder.	Stimulātor, to be angry.
Criminor, to blame.	Misēror, to pity.	Suātor, to kiss.
Cunctor, to delay.	Mōdēror, to rule.	Suffragor, to vote for one, to favour.
Dētor, to adhere.	Mōdūlor, to play a tune.	Suspicio, to suspect.
Dēminor, to rule.	Mōlīgēror, to humour.	Tergiversor, to dabble, to put off.
Epūlor, to feast.	Mōror, to delay.	Testor, to witness.
Excusor, to excuse.	Mistūror, to present.	Tātor, to defend.
Fanūlor, to serve.	Mistur, to borrow.	Vādor, to give bath, to force to give bath.
Fēlor, to keep holy-day.	Nūgor, to trust.	Vāgor, to wander.
Frustror, to disappoint.	Ohtestor, to beseech.	Vālelor, to prophesy.
Fūror, to steal.	Odōror, to smell.	Vēlor, to skirmish.
Glorior, to boast.	Opēror, to work.	Vēndor, to worship.
	Opīnor, to think.	Vēnor, to hunt.
	Optūlor, to help.	Vernor, to be employed.
	Ostūlor, to kiss.	Vbellicor, to brawl.
	Otiur, to be at leisure.	
	Pālor, to stroll or straggle.	
	Palpor, or -o, to stroke or soothe.	

### In the Second Conjugation,

Mēreor, mēritus, to deserve.	Pōlicitor, pollicitus, to promise.
Tuor, tutus, or tutus, to defend.	Licor, lictus, to bid at an auction.

### In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.  
Revertor, reversus, to return.

### In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter.	Partior, to divide.
Mentior, to lie.	Sortior, to draw or cast lots.
Māhor, to attempt something difficult.	Largior, to give liberally.

Part. pers. Blanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

*Reor, rātus, to think.*

*Misereor, misertus, or not contracted miseritus, to pity.*

*Fāteor, fassus, to confess.* The compounds of *fāteor* have *fessus*; as, *prōfiteor, professus, to profess.* So *confiteor, to confess, to own or acknowledge.*

## EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

*Lābor, lapsus, to slide.* So *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.*

*Ulcisor, ultus, to revenge.*

*Ūtor, ūsus, to use.* So *ab-, de-ūtor.*

*Lōquor, lōquūtus, or locūtus, to speak.* So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lōquor.*

*Sēquor, sēquutus, or sēcutus, to follow.* So *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor.*

*Quēror, questus, to complain.* So *con-, inter-, præ-quēror,*

*Nitor, nīsus or nīxus, to endeavour, to lean upon.* So *ad-, vel an-, eon-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nitor*: but the compounds have oftener *nixus*.

*Pāciscor, pactus, to bargain.* So *de-peciscor.*

*Grādior, gressus, to go.* So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grēdior.*

*Prōficiscor, profectus, to go a journey.*

*Nanciscor, nactus, to get.*

*Patior, passus, to suffer.* So *per-petior.*

*Āpiscor, aptus, to get.* So *adipiscor, adeptus, and indipiscor, indeptus.*

*Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.*

*Fruor, frūitus, or fructus, to enjoy.* So *per-fruor.*

*Obliviscor, oblitus, to forget.*

*Expergiscor, exporrectus, to awake.*

*Morior, mortuus, to die.* So *com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-mōrior.*

*Nascor, nātus, to be born.* So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

*Ōrior, ortus, ōriri, to rise.* So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *tūrus*; thus, *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus.*

## EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

*Mētor, mensus*, to measure. So *ad-*, *com-*, *di-*, *e-*, *præ-*, *re-mētor*.

*Ordior, orsus*, to begin. So *ex-*, *red-ordior*.

*Expērior, expertus*, to try.

*Oppērior, oppertus*, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect :

*Veneor, veneci, to feed.*

*Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved.*

*Mēdeor, medeci, to heal.*

*Rēmīscor, reminisci, to remember.*

*Iracor, irasci, to be angry.*

*Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.*

*Prævertor, præverti, to get before, to outrun.*

*Diffitoror, Diffiteri, to deny*

*Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to take lodging.*

*Dēfēscor, defēscisci, to be weary, or faint.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight ; *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *fēro*, and *fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six ; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *velo*.

*SUM* has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *ob-*, *sub-*, *super-sum*, and *insum*, which wants the preterite ; thus, *adsum*, *adsum*, *adsum*, &c.

*PROSUM*, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e* ; as,

Ind. Pr. Prō-sum, prod-es, prod-est ; pro-sūmus, &c.

Im. Prōd-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat ; prod-eramus, &c.

Sub. Im. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset ; prod-esse<sup>mus</sup>, &c.

Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. Infinit. Pres. Prod-esse.

In the other parts it is like *sum* : *Pro-sim*, *-sis*, &c. *Pro-fui*, *-fueram*, &c.

*POSSUM* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum* ; and is thus conjugated :

*Possum, pōtui, posse, To be able.*

*Indicative Mode.*

Pr. Possum, pōtes, pōtest ; possūmus, potestis, possunt.

Im. Pot-eram, -eras, -erat ; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, uerunt.

Plu. Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat ; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit ; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -simus, -sitis, -sint.  
*Im.* Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -semus, -setis, -sent.  
*Per.* Pot-uërim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Pot-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Pot-uëro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

*EO, ivi, itum, ire, To go.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.  
*Imp.* Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant. [ere.  
*Per.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, iv-  
*Plu.* Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.  
*Fut.* Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Eam, eas, eat; camus, eatis, eant.  
*Im.* Irem, ires, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.  
*Per.* Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.  
*Plu.* Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.  
*Fut.* Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* { I, ito; { ite, eunto. *Pres.* Ire.  
 { Ito, ito; { itote, eunto. *Perf.* Ivisse.  
*Fut.* Esse iturus, -a, -um.  
 Fuisse iturus.

*Participles.*

*Gerunds.*

*Supines.*

*Pr.* Iens, *Gen.* euntis.  
*Fut.* Iturus, -a, -um,

Eundum.  
 Eundi.  
 Eundo, &c.

1. Itum.  
 2. Itu.

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-, ab-, ex-, ob-, red-, sub-, per-, cō-, in-, prae-, ante-, prōd-eo*: only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii*, seldom *adivi, aditum, adire*, to go to; *perf. Adii, adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c. *adiëram, adiërim*, &c. So likewise *VENEO, venii*, —, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO, i-*

**illum, -tre,** to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

**Eo**, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *E.* he is going; *Irē*, he is gone; *Irērat*, he was gone; *Irērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *Vēnit*, he is coming; *Vēnit*, he is come; *Vēntrāt*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *Itur ab illa*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally: as, *pericula adveniunt*, are undergone, *Cic. Libri sibyllini lecti sunt*, were looked into, *Liv. Flumen pedibus transiri potest*, *Cæc. Inimicitiae subeantur*, *Cic.*

**QUEO**, I can, and **NEQUEO**, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

**VOLO, vōlui, velle, To will, or to be willing.**

*Indicative Mode.*

**Pr.** Vōl-o, vis, vult; volūmus, vultis, volunt.  
**Im.** Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant,  
**Per.** Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
**Pl.** Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
**Fut.** Vol-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

**Pr.** Velim, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.  
**Imp.** Vellem, velles, vellet; vellēmus, velletis, vellent.  
**Per.** Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
**Plu.** Vol-uissē, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
**Fut.** Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive.*

**Pres.** Velle.

**Perf.** Voluisse.

*The rest not used.*

*Participle.*

**Pres.** Volens.

**NOLO, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.**

*Indicative Mode.*

**Pr.** Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolūmus, non-vultis, nolunt.  
**Im.** Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
**Per.** Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
**Plu.** Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
**Fut.** Nōlam, noles, nolet; -nolemus, noletis, nolent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

**Pr.** Nōlim, nolis, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.  
**Im.** Nōllem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nolent.  
**Per.** Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
**Plu.** Nol-uissē, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
**Fut.** Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
	2. Sing.	2. Plur.	
<i>Pr.</i>	{ <i>Noli, vel</i>	{ <i>nolite, vel</i>	<i>Pr. Nolite.</i>
	{ <i>Nolito;</i>		<i>Pr. Nolens.</i>
		<i>nolitote.</i>	<i>Per. Noluiss.</i>
			<i>The rest wanting.</i>

**MALO**, *maloi, malle, To be more willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Māl-o,</i>	<i>mavis, mavult;</i>	<i>malūmus, mavultis, malunt.</i>
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Mal-ebam,</i>	<i>-ebas, -ebat;</i>	<i>-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Mal-ui,</i>	<i>-uisti, -uit;</i>	<i>-uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.</i>
			<i>-uere.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Mal-ueram,</i>	<i>-ueras, -uerat;</i>	<i>-ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Mal-am,</i>	<i>-es, -et;</i>	<i>&amp;c. this is scarcely in use.</i>

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Malim,</i>	<i>malis, malit;</i>	<i>malimus, malitis, malint.</i>
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Mallem,</i>	<i>malles, mallet;</i>	<i>mallemus, malletis, mallent.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Mal-uerim,</i>	<i>-ueris, -uerit;</i>	<i>-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Mal-uisssem,</i>	<i>-uisses, -uisset;</i>	<i>-uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Mal-uerō,</i>	<i>-ueris, -uerit;</i>	<i>-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.</i>

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pres. Malle. Perf. Maluisse. The rest not used.*

**FERO**, *tūli, lātum, ferre, To carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Fēro,</i>	<i>fers, fert;</i>	<i>ferūmus, fertis, ferunt.</i>
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Fer-ebam,</i>	<i>-ebas, -ebat;</i>	<i>-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Tuli,</i>	<i>tulisti, tulit;</i>	<i>tulimur, tulistis, tulerunt, -erunt.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Fer-am,</i>	<i>-eres, -erēt;</i>	<i>-eremus, feretis, ferent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Feram,</i>	<i>feras, ferat;</i>	<i>feramus, feratis, ferant.</i>
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Ferrem,</i>	<i>ferres, ferret;</i>	<i>ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Tul-erim,</i>	<i>-erim, -erit;</i>	<i>-erimus, -eritis, -erint.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Tulisssem,</i>	<i>-isses, -isset;</i>	<i>-isssemus, -issetis, -issent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Tut-ero,</i>	<i>-eris, -erit;</i>	<i>-erimus, -eritis, -erint.</i>

<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
Pr.	{ Fer, ferto : Ferto,	{ ferte, ferunto. fertote,	Pr. Ferre. Per. Tulisse.
		Fut. Esse, laturus, a, um. Fuisse laturus, a, um.	
<i>Participles.</i>		<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
Pres.	Fērens,	Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
Fut.	Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendi. Ferendo, &c.	2. Latū.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.**Indicative Mode.*

Pr. Fēror,	ferris, vel ferre,	fertur ; ferimur, ferimini, ferantur.
Im. Fer-ebar,	-ebaris, vel ebare,	-ebatur ; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Perf.	Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.	
Plu.	Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.	
Fut. Ferar,	ferēris, vel ferēre,	feretur ; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Pr. Ferar,	feraris, vel ferare,	feratur ; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Im. Ferrer,	ferreris, vel ferrere	ferretur ; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Per.	Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.	
Plu.	Latus essem, &c. latus fuisset, &c.	
Fut.	Latus fuero, &c.	

*Imperative Mode.*

Pres. Ferre vel fertor, fertor ; ferimini, feruntōr.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

Pres. Ferri.	Perf. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Latum iri.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro* ; as, *affēro*, *adūli*, *allatum* ; *aufēro*, *abstuli*, *oblatus* ; *diffēro*, *distuli*, *allatum* ; *confēro*, *contuli*, *collatum* ; *infēro*, *intuli*, *illatum* ; *effēro*, *extuli*, *elatus* ; *effēro*, *extuli*, *elatus*. So *circum*-, *per*-, *trans*-, *de*-, *pro*-, *ante*-, *præfēro*. In some writers we find, *adfero*, *adūli*, *adlatum* ; *conlatum*, *inlatum* ; *obfero*, &c. for *affēro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo* ; *maior* for *magis volo* ; *fēro*, *fēra*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Fēror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *fertur*, for *ferēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, and *fūcio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer* : thus we say, *dīc*, *duc*, *fāc*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.



**FIO, factus, fieri, To be made or done, to become.**

*Indicative Mode.*

**Pr.** Fio, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.  
**Im.** Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.  
**Per.** Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.  
**Plu.** Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.  
**Fut.** Fiam, fies, fiet; fiemus, fietis, fient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

**Pr.** Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.  
**Im.** Fierem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.  
**Per.** Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.  
**Plu.** Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.  
**Fut.** Factus fuero, &c.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

**Pr.** { Fi, fito : { fite, fiunto.  
           { Fito, fito : { fitote, fiunto.  
**Pr.** Fieri,  
**Per.** Esse vel fuisse factus, a, um.  
**Fut.** Factum iri.

*Participles.*

*Supine.*

**Per.** Factus, -a, -um.  
**Fut.** Faciendus, -a, -um.  
 Factu.

The compounds of *ficio* with retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as *calefacto*, to warm, *calefacto*, *cal-fac*; but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confli*, it is done, and *conferti*; *desist*, it is wanting. *infli*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called *Neuter Past-tense Verbs*, which like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *solles*, *solitus*, *solere*, to use; *audes*, *ausus*, *audere*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavisus*, *gaudere*, to rejoice; *fido*, *fusus*, *fidere*, to trust; So *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *maereo*, *maestus*, *maerere*, to be sad; but *maestus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *iuratus sum* and *coenatus sum*, for *iuravi* and *coenavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vāpūlo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

**DEFECTIVE VERBS.**

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, and numbers and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cōpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

*Odi*, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *ōdissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*; *exosus*, *perosus*.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihî contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

### Redundant Verbs.

These are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavas*, *lavare*; and *lavo*, *lavas*, *lavare*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,

*Ferveo*, *ferves*, and *fervo*, *fervis*, to boil.

*Fulgeo*, *fulges*, and *fulgo*, *fulgis*, to shine.

*Strideo*, *strides*, and *strido*, *stridin*, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

*Tueor*, *tuëris*, and *tuor*, *tuëris*, to defend.

To these add *tergeo*, *terges*; and *tergo*, *tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation and rarely of the fourth; as,

*Fodio*, *fodis*, *fodère*, and *foëdo*, *fodis*, *fodire*, to dig.

*Sallo*, *sallis*, *sallère*, and *sallio*, *sallis*, *sallire*, to salt.

*Arceao*, -is, *arceatere*, and *arceao*, *arceatere*, to send for.

*Morior*, *morëris*, *mori*, and *morior*, *morëris*, *moriri*, to die.

*So Orior*, *orëris*, and *orior*, *orëris*, *oriri*, to rise.

*Potior*, *potëris*, and *potior*, *potëris*, *potiri*, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cia*, *cies*, *ciëre*; and *cio*, *cis*, *cire*, to rouse; whence, *accire*, and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Ede*, *edis* or *es*, *edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essëm*, *ederes* or *esses*, &c.

Imp. *Ede* or *es*, *edito* or *esto*; *edite* or *estis*; *editote* or *estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *ëstur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and the others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

*Aggëro*, -as, to heap up.

*Appello*, -as, to call.

*Compello*, -as, to address.

*Colligro*, -as, to bind.

*Consterno*, -as, to astonish.

*Effëro*, -as, to enrage.

*Fundo*, -as, to found.

*Mando*, -as, to command.

*Obsëro*, -as, to lock.

*Volo*, -as, to fly.

*Aggëro*, -is, to bring together.

*Appello*, -is, to drive to, to arrive.

*Compello*, -is, to drive together.

*Colligo*, -is, to gather together.

*Consterno*, -is, to strew.

*Effëro*, -ers, to bring out.

*Fundo*, -is, to pour out.

*Mando*, -is, to chew.

*Obsëro*, -is, to beat.

*Volo*, -is, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

*Cëlo*, -as, to strain.

*Dico*, -as, to dedicate.

*Edëro*, -as, to train up.

*Cëlo*, -is, to till.

*Dico*, -is, to say.

*Edüco*, -is, to lead forth.



Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2 **INCEPTIVE Verbs** mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*; as, *cales*, to be hot, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *lobascō*, from *lubo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco* from *hio* is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. **DESIDERATIVE Verbs** signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *carnâturio*, I desire to sup, from *carnatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esurio*, -*ivi*, -*itum*, to desire to eat; *parturio*, -*ivi*, —, to be in travail; *nupturio*, -*ivi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo*, *serbillo*, &c. I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *allico*, and *candico*, -*are*, to be or to grow whitish; also, *nigresco*, *fuligo*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as *Copesso*, *fucoso*, *petesso*, or *petisso*, I take. I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fûto*, *fendo*, *specto*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeco*, for *pro-co*; or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *perjûro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *pro-fero*, &c. for *absporto*, *omitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debeto*, *pro-fero*, &c. So *denuo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified to take, or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *concalco* *laedo*, *colido*; *audis*, *obedis*, &c. *Adfero*, *subfero*, *sollendo*, *implis*, &c. for *adfero*, *adfero*, *conlaedo*, *implis*, &c.

## PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in English, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *us*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving: *amâturus*, about to love; and the perfect and future-passive; as, *amatus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *stâturus*.

From some Neuter verbs, are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus*, *festinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *cessatus*, *audatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnavus*, *decursus*, *destitus*, *emeritus*, *emeritus*, *obitus*, *placitus*, *successus*, *uccisus*, &c. and also of the future in *us*; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *crubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fusus*; *soleo*, *solens*, and *solutus*; *vapulo*, *vapulans*, and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudio*, *gaudens*, *gavissus* and *gavissurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audendus*. *Aus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, atque possit*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 631.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

*Loquens*, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Dependent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus*, conatus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testatus, veneratus, &c.

There are several Participles, compounded with *in* signifying not, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition: as, *Insciens*, *inaperans*, *indicens* for *nōn dicens*, *inopinans*, and *necopinans*, *immērens*; *Illeceus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustoditus*, *immetatus*, *impunitus*, *imparatus*, *incomitatus*, *incomptus*, *indeinnatus*, *indolatus*, *incorruptus*, *interitulus*, and *imperierritus*, *inestatus*, *inausus*, *inopinatus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, for *nōn census*, not registered: *infectus* for *nōn factus*, *invisus* for *nōn visus*, *indictus* for *nōn dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficere*; *invisus* from *invideo*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away time, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

*Amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*; or a substantive; as, *Profectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *littera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS* and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs: as, *alatus*, *barbatus*, *coriatus*, *caudatus*, *cristatus*, *auritus*, *pellitus*, *turritus*; *astutus*, *cornutus*, *navutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus*, *ceratus*, *argentatus*, *ferreus*, *plumbatus*, *gyratus*, *calceatus*, *chrysatus*, *galcatus*, *tunicatus*, *lervatus*, *poliatus*, *lymphatus*, *purpuratus*, *prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *perlitus*, skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles, in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action: as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much: *Sal. Jug.* 60. and 101: *Liv.* xxv. 13. So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

#### GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed: and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number except the vocative.

There are both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *to* and some others often take *u* instead *e*: as, *faciendum*, *dl*, *do*, *du*: *experiandum*, *potiunum*, *gerundum*, *potundum*, *durundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active and the latter in a passive sense but sometimes the contrary; as, *coccum non vapulatum*, *dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *us vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

#### ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, Manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting **CIRCUMSTANCE** are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi?	Where?
Hic	Here.
Illic	} There.
Isthic	
Ibi	
Intus	Within
Foris	Without
Ubique	Every where.
Nusquam	No where.
Alieubi	Somewhere.
Alibi	Elsewhere.
Ubius	Any where.
Eodem	In the same place.

Horsum	Hitherward.
Illorsum,	Thitherward.
Sursum	Upward.
Deorsum	Downward.
Antrosum	Forward.
Retrosusum	Backward.
Dextrosum	Towards the right.
Sinistrosum	Towards the left.

4. *Motion from a place.*

Quo?	Whither?
Huc	Hither.
Illic	} Thither.
Isthuo	
Intro	
Foras	Th.
Eo	Out.
Alia	To that place.
Aliaquo	To another place.
Eodem	To some place.
	To the same place.

Unde?	Whence?
Hinc	Hence.
Illinc,	} Thence.
Isthinc	
Inde	
Indidem	From the same place.
Aliunde	From elsewhere.
Allicunde	From some place.
Sicunde	From any place.
Utrinque	On both sides.
Superne	From above.
Inferne	From below.
Caelitus	From heaven
Funditus	From the ground.

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quorsum?	Whitherward?
Versus	Towards.

Qua?	Which way?
Hac	This way.
Illic	} That way.
Isthae	
Alia	
	Another way.

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

2. Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such, as signify,

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc	Now.
Hodie	To-day.
Tunc	} Then.
Tum	
Hieri	
Quidam	} Yesterday.
Pridem	
Prædic	
Nidius tertius	The day before.
Nuper	Three days ago.
Jamjam	Lately.
Mo	Presently.
Statim	Immediately.
Proinus	By and by.
Illico,	Instantly.
Cras	Strakway.
Postridie	To-morrow.
Peregrine	The day after.
Indidum	Two days hence.
	Not yet.

Quando?	When?
Alquando	} Sometimes.
Nonnunquam	
Interdum	
Semper	Ever, always.
Nunquam	Never.
Interim	In the mean time.
Quotidie	Daily.

2. *Continuance of time.*

Diu	Long.
Quamdiu?	How long.
Tamdiu	So long.
Jamdiu	} Long ago.
Jamquidam	
Jampridem	

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quoties?	How often?
Sæpe,	Often
Raro	Seldom.
Toties	So often.
Aliquoties	For several times.

Vicissim.		By turns.	Semel,	Once.
Alternatim,			Bis,	Twice.
Rurus,		Again.	Ter,	Thrice.
Iterum,			Quater,	Four times, &c.
Silinde,		Ever and anon, now		
Idemdem		and then.		

## 3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	Then.	Dentique.	Finally.
Deinde,	After that.	Postremo.	Lastly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Primo. -um,	First.
Porro,	Moreover.	Secundo. -um,	Second'y.
Deinceps,	So forth.	Tertio. -um,	Thirdly.
Denuo,	Of new.	Quarto. -um,	Fourthly, &c.

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as *bone*, well; *male*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.
2. CERTAINTY; as, *prædicto*, *certe*, *sane*, *plânè*, *nam*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.
3. CONTINGENCE; as, *forte*, *forasan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequâquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.
5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.
6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edepol*, *mæcantor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpote*, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.
8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *separatim*, separately; *sigillatim*, one by one; *virilim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul*, *undâ*, *pârter*, together; *generatim*, generally; *universatim*, universally; *plêrumque*, for the most part.
10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.
11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quære*, *quomôdum*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quomodo*, *quâ*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quâ*, *quando*, *quandâ*, *quoties*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative*, denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde*, *maximè*, *magnopère*, *maximopere*, *summo pere*, *admôdum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *ninilum*, too much; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimè*, best; *pestimè*, worst; *fortissimè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.
2. DEFECT; as, *ferme*, *ferè*, *propemôdum*, *pènè*, almost; *pàrum*, little; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.
3. PREFERENCE; as, *pôtius*, *âtius*, rather; *pôtissimùm*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imo*, yes nay, nay rather.
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adèd*, so; *ut*, *ut*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *vélut*, *véluti* *ceu*, *tangum*, *quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *âtis*, enough; *îdem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.
5. UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY; as, *aliter*, *secus*, otherwise, *aliôqui* or *aliôquin*, else; *nêdum*, much more or much less.
6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim*, *paulatim*, *pôdîntentim*, by degrees, piece-meal; *vix*, scarcely; *argre*, hardly, with difficulty.
7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantum*, *sôlùm*, *modò*, *tantummodo*, *duntaxat*, *enim*, only.

## Derivation, Comparison, and Composition of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in TIM or TUS; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds generally; *speciatim*, *vocatim*, *gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E. as, *liberè*, freely; *plênè*, fully; some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsò*, *tantum*, *graviter*; a few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectò*, *antiquitus*, *proutim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -ò; *purè*, -iter; *certe*, -ò; *caudè* -tim; *humanè*, -iter, -itus; *publicè*, *publicûs*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpiter*, *felicitè* *acriter*, *pariter*; *facilè*, *repente*: one in O, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives, is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recentis* *negus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum* *ridens*, for *perfidè*.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, Manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting *CIRCUMSTANCE* are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. Motion or rest in a place.		4. Motion from a place.	
Ubi?	Where?	Horsum	Hitherward.
Hic	Here.	Illorsum,	Thitherward.
Illic	} There.	Sorsum	Upward.
Isthic		Deorsum	Downward.
Ibi		Antrosum	Forward.
Intus	Within	Retrorsum	Backward.
Foris	Without	Dextrosum	Towards the right.
Ubique	Every where.	Sinistrosum	Towards the left.
Nusquam	No where.		
Alibi	Somewhere.		
Alibi	Elsewhere.		
Ubivis	Any where.		
Eodem	In the same place.		
2. Motion to a place.			
Quo?	Whither?	Unde?	Whence?
Huc	Hither.	Hinc	Hence.
Illic	} Thither.	Illinc,	} Thence.
Isthuc		Isthinc	
Intro		Inde	
Foras	Th.	Indidem	From the same place.
Eo	Out.	Allicunde	From elsewhere.
Alia	To that place.	Allicunde	From some place.
Alia	To another place.	Sicunde	From any place.
Aliaquo	To some place.	Utrinque	On both sides.
Eodem	To the same place.	Superne	From above.
		Inferne	From below.
		Cœlitus	From heaven
		Funditus	From the ground.
3. Motion towards a place.			
Quorsum?	Whitherward?	Quâ?	Which way?
Versus	Towards.	Hâc	This way.
		Illâc	} That way.
		Isthâc	
		Alia	
			Another way.

2. Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such, as signify,

1. Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.		2. Continuance of time.	
Nunc	Now.	Quando?	When?
Hodie	To-day.	Alquando	} Sometimes.
Tunc	} Then.	Nonnunquam	
Tum		Interdum	
Hæc		Semper	Ever, always.
Dudum	Yesterday.	Nunquam	Never.
Proximè	Heretofore	Interim	In the mean time.
Proxime	The day before.	Quotidie	Daily.
Nidius tertius	Three days ago.		
Nuper	Lately.		
Jamjam	Presently.		
Mox	Immediately.		
Statim	By and by.		
Prostatim	Instantly.		
Illico,	Stratwayn		
Cras	To-morrow.		
Postridie	The day after.		
Perendie	Two days hence.		
Nondum	Not yet.		





Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded: thus,

<i>Am,</i>	}	<i>round about.</i>	}	[as,	<i>Ambio,</i>	<i>to surround.</i>
<i>Di,</i>		<i>asunder.</i>			<i>Divello,</i>	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
<i>Dis,</i>					<i>Distraho,</i>	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
<i>Re,</i>		<i>again.</i>			<i>Rélevo,</i>	<i>to read again.</i>
<i>Se,</i>		<i>aside, or apart.</i>			<i>Sépōno,</i>	<i>to lay aside.</i>
<i>Con,</i>		<i>together.</i>			<i>Coneresco,</i>	<i>to grow together.</i>

## INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!* Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY: as *exat!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, hei, heu, ehu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *pax!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE: as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apoge!* away, begone, avant, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as *atat!* ha aba!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *vo!* wo, pex on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *cho, ehodum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hom!* ha!

Some Interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

## CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil*, is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction and twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil!* In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid,*" is one sentence made up of three, by the conjunctions and and but.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, quæ, and; Etiam, quodque, item, also; cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *neq, neque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either or.
3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.
4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, aut, atqui, but; tamen, atâmen, verumtamen, verumtamen, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.*

5. CAUSAL ; as, *nam, namque, enim*, for ; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, because ; *quod*, that because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL ; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore ; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore ; *proinde*, therefore ; *cum, quum*, seeing since ; *quoadmodum*, forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE ; as, *ut uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL ; as, *si, sin*, if ; *dum, modo, dummodo*, provided, upon condition that ; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE ; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE ; as, *solum, certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE ; as, *an, anne, num*, whether ; *ne annon*, whether, not ; *neque, or not*.

12. EXPLETIVE ; as, *autem, vero*, now truly ; *quidem, equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE ; as, *deinde*, thereafter ; *denique*, finally ; *insuper*, moreover ; *ceterum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE ; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c.* to wit, namely.

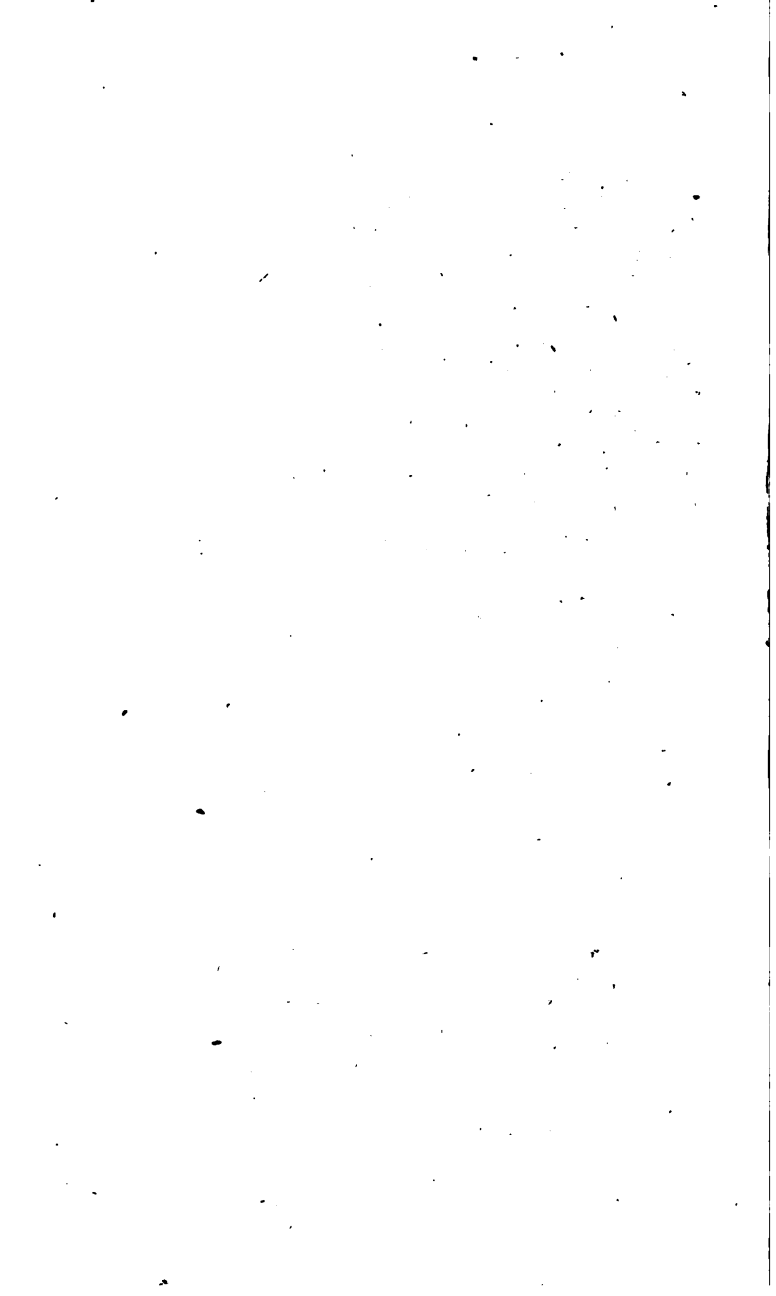
Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs* ; as, *An scribit ?* Does he write ? or, *suspensive conjunctions* ; as *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence ; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.* : some stand in the second place ; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim* : and some may indifferently be put either first or second ; as, *Etiā, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attemen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam quippe, upñic, ut, uti, ergo ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, si nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable ; as in the following verse,

*Inductusque pñiz, dñctve, trochive, quicorit.* Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation ; thus,

*Arbutos factus montanisque fraga legent.* Ovid.



## SENTENCES.

**A SENTENCE** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another: namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement* ; and that of *Government* or influence.

*Concord*, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

*Government*, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb; or by a preposition : or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All sentences are either **SIMPLE** or **COMPOUND**.

*Syntax* therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

## SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative ; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative ; subjunctive, or imperative mood.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

*The boy reads his lesson :* Here "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of: "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home.* Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of, "diligent," added to it ; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

## CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

## 1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

**RULE I.** Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case ; as,

*Cicero, orator, Cicero the orator ;*  
*Urbs Athenæ, the city of Athens ;*

*Ciceronis oratoris, of Cicero the orator.*  
*Urbis Athenarum, of the city Athens.*

## 2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

**II.** An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case ; as,

*Bonus vir, a good man ;*

*Fœmina casta, a chaste woman ;*

*Dulce pomum, a sweet apple ;*

*Boni viri, good men :*

*Fœminæ castæ, chaste women.*

*Dulcia Pomæ, sweet apples.*

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to adjectives, pronouns and participles ; as, *Mens liber, my book ; ager colendus, a field to be tilled ; Plur. Mei Libri, agri colendi, &c.*

**Obs. 1.** The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive ; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender ; as, *triste, sc. negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. ; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine ; as, *Non posteriores feram, sup. partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferina*, good venison; *Summum Bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, *Ovid Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing; as, *Media Nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, *a wise man*, *a good horse*; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, *food convenient for me*; or the adjective be emphatical; as, *Alexander the Great*. And the article goes before the adjective: except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs, *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men*; *many a man*; *so good a man*; *as good a man*; *how beautiful a prospect*! or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res prestantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive in English sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *a stone-arch*, &c. and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty-foot*; *six-score*; *ten thousand fathom*; *a hundred head*; *an hundred weight*. We say by this means; by that means; or, by these means; by those means; or, by this mean, by that mean, as it was used anciently: So, *This forty years*, for *these*; *these and those kind of things*, for *this and that*. *Each*, *every*, *either*, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

### 3. Agreement of a verb with a nominative.

III. A verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

*Ego* lego, I read;  
*Tu* scribis, Thou writest or you write;  
*Præceptor* docet, the master teaches;

*Nos* legimus, We read.  
*Vos* scribitis, Ye or you write.  
*Præceptores* docent, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille*, and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *tu es patronus*, *tu pater*. Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter

pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere cœperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the Plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; the multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural the adjective or participle will be plural also and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cœli: Pars obnoxia tridunt, se formicæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars rapta, se. virginæ*, Liv. i. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as *Pars arduus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *id* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I*; *it is he*; *it was they*; *it appears*; in Latin *Ego sum ille est*, &c. It is sometimes understood; as, *may be*, for *it may be*; *as follows* for *as it follows*; *as is thought*, for *as it is thought*.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were*; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us*, for *there are*; *There was more sopulats*, for *were*; *great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

### *Accusative before the Infinitive.*

§. IV. The Infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

*Caudeo te valere,*

*I am glad that you are well.*

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem advenitare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied; especially after participles, as *Hostium exercitum c. sum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum, scilicet me esse*. Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Caudeo te valere, i. e. quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem: Jubeo vos bene sperare, or ut bene speretis*; *Prohibeo eum exire, or ne exeat*; *non dubito eum fecisse* or much better, *quin fecerit*. Scio quod filius amet, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Mors si potuit, for eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superetur*, for *populum Romanum superasse*, Nep. *Ex animi sententiâ juro, ut ego rem publicam non deseram, for me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.



*The same Case after a Verb as before it.*

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it; *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

*Ego sum discipulus,  
Tu vocaris Joannes,  
Illa incedit regina,  
Scio illum haberi sapientem,  
Scio vos esse discipulos,*

*I am a scholar.  
You are named John.  
She walks as a queen.  
I know that he is esteemed wise.  
I know that you are scholars.*

*So Rodeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evident digni, they will become worthy: Rompublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus, I am-unwilling to be tedious; Malim videri timidus, quam parum prudens, Cic. Non licet mihi esse negligentem, Cic. Natura dedit omnibus esse beatos, Claud. Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putari mendacem; Fuit esse medium, sc. se, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem? sc. cum, Ter. Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse; Sallust.*

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem,* and *existo*; *eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Director, appello, vocor, nominor, nuncupor,* to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, satutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos* scil. se; it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio, dici, doctus or doctum, sc. me dici; Cupio esse clementem, non putari mendacem; vult esse medius.*

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta,* Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt,* Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium ira amoris integratio est.* The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Optidum est appellatum Possidonia,* Plin. Sometimes however the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda,* Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato,* I may be happy; or *licet mihi esse beatum,* me being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum.* The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum,* One may be happy, scil. *alicui, or homini.*

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronepos,* for *Se esse pronepotem,* Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari,* for *sapientem,* &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero veribus esse nocens,* Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse spercer,* Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I;* unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him.* We often use, however, this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me, It can't be me, It was him;* for *It is I, it cannot be I, it was he.*

## GOVERNMENT.

## I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former ;*) as,

*Amor Dei*, the love of God.

*Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.

*Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son; and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus* for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*. The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him; So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *caritas solis*, affection to the very soil, *Liv. ii. 1.*

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectōris Andromache*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ad eam* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria milia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive particularly among the poets; as, *El corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended; *Virg. Æn. vi. 500.*

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax*, *cum*, *aliquo*; *Amor* in *vel erga*, *aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Memento illius*, *vel de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. *Sallust. &c.*

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides of; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to *Avernus*; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood, as *Liber ejus illius, hujus, &c.* The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*: The book of her, or her book, sc. *feminæ*, *Libri eorum, v. earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster* not *nostri*; *sum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum*; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, *Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27.* *Labor mei*, My labour, *Plaut.*

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus, tuum hominis simplicitas*. *Cic. Phil. ii. 43.* *Noster duorum eventus*, *Liv.* *Tuum ipsius studium*, *Cic.* *Mea scripta, timentia*, &c. *Hor.* *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, *Cic.* *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime.* *Id.*

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used when the action of the verb is reflected as it were, upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se.* *Miles defendit suam vitam*: *Dicit se scripturum esse.* We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind: as, *Deum agnosceamus ex operibus ejus*, *Cic.* *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum eis profectiscantur, for una secum, Cæsar.*

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Ad-

jective of praise or dispraise joined with it they may be put in the genitive or ablative ; as,

*Vir summa prudentiæ, or summa prudentia,*  
*Peur probæ indolis, or probæ indole,*

A man of great wisdom.  
 A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive but by some preposition understood ; as *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summa prudentia*, is in the same with *vir cum summa prudentia*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used ; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant ; *Vir imi subsellii, hominis minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war ; Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative ; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare : *absoluta*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasis*, Id. *Mulier magna nato*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence ; as, *Adolescens eximii spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative : thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio* ; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdoche* ; as *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque deos sinills*, Virg.

### Adjectives taken as substantives.

VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; as,

*Multum pecuniæ*, Much money.

*Quid rei est ?* What is the matter ?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers ; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum, fidei, id negotii ; quicquid erat patrum, reos, diceres*, Liv. *Id loci ; Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity ; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, mirum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive : as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity ; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e* ; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis* : we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural ; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris aperta, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli*, sc. *negotia*, Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood ; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Thyris, &c.*

### Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying need, require the ablative ; as,

*Est opus pecuniæ*, There is need of money ;

*Urus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition as *pro* or the like understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive ; as, *Lectissimis, opus est*, Quint. *Opere usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *opus maturato*, Need of haste: *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agram ut te adimuleas*, Plant. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed absolutely i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est*; *si opus sit*, &c.

## II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Adjectives governing the genitive.

**X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,**

*Avidus gloriæ*, Desirous of glory.  
*Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

*Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud.

To this rule belong, 1. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *cæpax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens*; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *inametus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind: 1. Desire; as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *certior*, *consciens*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignarus*, *incertus*, *inscius*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *immemor*, *rudis*; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens*; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus*; *impavidus*, *interritus*, *intrepidus*. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*; *innoxius*, *innocens*, *insons*.

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi*; *ardens*, *audax*, *aversus*, *diversus*, *egregius erectus*, *fulvus*, *felix*, *festus*, *furens*, *ingens*, *integer*, *lætus*, *præstans animi*; *modicus voti*; *integer vitæ*; *seri studiorum*, Hor. But we say *ager periculis*, *ardens in cupiditatibus*, *præstans doctrinæ*, *modicus cultu*; *Lætus negotiis*, *de re*, or *propter rem*, &c. and never *ager pedum*, &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*: *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis*, Cic. *Avidius ad rem*, Ter. *Jure contritus & peritus or juris*, Cic. *Rudis litterarum in jure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte*, ad mala, Ovid. *Doctus Latinæ*, *Latinis literis*, Cic. *Assuetus labore*, in omnia, Liv. *Mensus herili*, Virg. *Insuper moribus Romanis*, in the dat. Liv. *Laboris*, ad opera portanda, Cæsar. *Derictus bello*, & triumphis, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius*, *solicitus*, *securus*, *de re aliqua*; *diligens*, in ad,

de, Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re* : *Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa*, in *re*, or in *negotio* or some such word understood ; as, *Capidus laudis*, i. e. *causæ* or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive ; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ* fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

**XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural ; as,**

*Aliquis philosophorum,*  
*Senior fratrum,*  
*Doctissimus Romanorum,*  
*Quis nostrum ?*  
*Una musarum,*  
*Octavus sapientum,*

Some one of the philosophers.  
The elder of the brothers.  
The most learned of the Romans.  
Which of us ?  
One of the muses.  
The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among* ; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds : also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals ; as, *unus, duo, tres ; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former : as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimus*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *d, e, ex*, or *in* ; as, *Unus de fratribus* ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes, for omnium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimus orbis Britannos*, Horat. od. 1. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two ; Superlatives when we speak of more than two ; as, *Majus fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two* ; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two : *quis unus, alius nullus*, with regard to three or more ; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you two ; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you three : but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

## 2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

**XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative ; as,**

*Utilis bello,*  
*Perniciōsus reipublicæ,*  
*Similis patri,*

Profitable for war,  
Hurtful to the commonwealth.  
Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*.—*Culamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exilis, fumentis, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratus, jucundus, lætus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, dedus, fidus, fidelis, lentis, nutis, propitius*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, insensus, infestus, infidas, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, proprius, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconvenientis*.

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis, levis, obuius, peruius*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, iuvius*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Prenus, prœstus, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Equalis, æquatus, par, compar, suppar*.—*Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus*.—*Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor*.

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conventus, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous*; as, *Mari, ær, continens, est, Cic*.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subjectus, simplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præcens, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*—particularly.

Verbals in *BILIS* and *DUS* govern the dative; as,

*Amandus vel amabilis omnibus,*

To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis multis*; *Optabile omnibus pax*; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Cic*. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi, Hor*. Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata, hated by, Hor*.

Verbals in *DUS* are often construed with the prep. *a*; as, *Dens est venerandus, & volendus a nobis, Cic*. Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis, defleta, rather than, multis defleta, Cic*. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi*.

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me: so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* *Hor*. *Exitium pecori, Virg*. *Virtutibus hostis, Cic*.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius, adversus*; as, *Similis tibi, or tui*; *Superstes patri, or patris*; *Consciis facinoræ, or facinoris*. *Consciis* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispaes, æquales, communes, inter se*: *Par & communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. *Liv*.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

*Utile, inutile, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei, or ad aliquid* Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions: as, *Attentus quæsit, Hor. Attentus ad rem, Ter*

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only: as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, eratus, offensus, suspectus, ALICUI* II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratosus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, plus, impius, prolixus, severus, scordidus, torvus, vehemens, IN ALIQUEM* III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus and the preposition *IN* *ERGA* or *ADVERSUS* going before: as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, exstirabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis, (and perhaps also inexcusable & intolerabilis) iniquus, sævus, ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM, Benevolus, benignus, molestus, ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM, Mitis, comis; IN, or ERGA ALIQUEM and ALICUI, Pervicax, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM, Crudelis, IN ALIQUEM, seldom, ALICUI, Amicus, amulus, insensus, infestus, ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM, Gratus ALICUI or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM* We say *amicus alicui* or *amicus*; but oftener *ab aliquo* and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

*AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto quilibet fuit jussu magistratuum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

*Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or in iram.*

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *Proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets: as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facti occidunt*, Hor. *Supiter omnibus idem*, Virg. *Eadem illis censemus*, Cic. But in prose we commonly find *idem qui, &c. ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*: as, *Peripatetici quondam idem erant qui Academicæ*, Cic. *Est animus erga te idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c. In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*: as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis & par*.

### 3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These Adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, and fractus*; also, *natus, satius, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

<i>Dignus honore,</i>	Worthy of honor.	<i>Captus oculis,</i>	Blind.
<i>Contentus parvo,</i>	Content with little.	<i>Fractus viribus,</i>	Trusting to his strength.
<i>Præditus virtute,</i>	Endued with virtue.	<i>Ortus regibus,</i>	Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus.*

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fractus viribus*, scil. *in, &c.* Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nymphe*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus, and contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus averum*, Virg. So *Macte esto, or macti esto virtutis or virtute*. Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem macte virtute esse*, ac. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

## XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative ; as,

*Plenus ira* or *ira*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inops temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus serotus est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est soluti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor & melle & felle est secundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus participes*, Curt. *Homo ratione participes*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cædis habete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only ; as, *Benignus, exsors, inops, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prodigius, largus*.

2. With the ablative only : *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, urgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently : *Compos, consors, egenus, exhaeres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently : *Abundans, cæcus, extorris, factus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus*.

5. With both promiscuously : *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

6. With a preposition ; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, &c. re aliqua* ; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ob solo patrio*, banished ; *Orba ab optimatibus conelo*, Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parvus, in re aliqua*, *Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus solutus, vacuus, &c. re aliqua*. *Potens ad rem, & in re*.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

## § 1. VERBS governing only one Case.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ; as,

*Est regis*, It belongs to the king ; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putaram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani ; vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Hominis est errare ; Arrogantis est neglegere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibœi*, Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted ; as,

*Tuum est*, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner ; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Est facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*. Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood : as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed as *Munus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neuquam officium liberi esse hominis puo*, Ter. In some cases, the preceding substantive may be repeated : as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these : *Ea sunt modo gloria, neque parandi belli, scil. causa or facta*, Sall. *Nihil tam æquandis libertatis est, for ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv.



Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*: *So mos est vel fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

## XVI. *Misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive; as,

*Miserege civium tuorum,*

Pity your countrymen.

*Satagit rerum suarum,*

{ He has his hands full at home, or has  
{ enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango decipit, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, fastidio, invidio, lator, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor*; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Laberum decipitur*, Hor. *Discrucior, animi*, Ter. *Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi vel animo*; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animorum*, are in suspense, Cic. *Justitia prius miror*, Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno*: likewise, *adspicio, condico, credo, frustror, funo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo*: as, *Abstineo irarum*; *Desino, querelarum*; *Regnavit popularum*, Hor. *Desistere pugnae*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed: thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo*. *Hoc animum meum excruciat*. *Fastidio, miror, vereor, aliquem, vel aliquid*. *Lator aliquid re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quid, ut, ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid, & ab aliquo*, to give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente*; *Quiesco a labore*; *Regnare in equitibus, oppidis*, &c. in Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adspici id*; *Frustrari in re*; *Favere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causæ*, *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore* or *anxietate*.

## 2. Verbs governing the Dative.

## XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

*Finis venit imperto,*  
*Animus redit hostibus;*  
*Tibi seris, tibi metis,*

An end is come to the empire, Liv.  
Courage returns to the enemy, Id.  
You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis*, Id.  
*Sol lucet etiam sceleratis*, Sen. *Hæret lateri lethalis arundo*, Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

## I. *Sum*, and its compounds govern the dative; (except *possum*) as,

*Præfuit exercitui,*  
*Adfuit precibus,*

He commanded the army.  
He was present at prayers.

## ¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person; as,

*Est mihi liber,*  
*Sunt mihi libri,*  
*Dico libros esse mihi,*

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.  
Books are to me, i. e. I have books.  
I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber*

*deest mihi*, I want a book ; *Libri desunt mihi* ; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with **SATIS**, **BENE**, and **MALE**, govern the dative ; as,

*Satisfacio*, *satisdo*, *benefacio*, *beneficio*, *malefacio*, *maledico*, *tibi*, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, **AD**, **ANTE**, **CON**, **IN**, **INTER**, **OB**, **PRÆ**, **SUB**, and **SUPER**, govern the dative ; as,

1. *Accedo*, *accreasco*, *accumbō*, *acquiesco*, *adno*, *adnato*, *adequo*, *adheres*, *adito*, *adstipulo*, *advorso*, *effugio*, *allabor*, *allaboro*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applaudo*, *appropinquo*, *arideo*, *aspilo*, *assentior*, *astides*, *asisto*, *assuesco*, *assurgo*.

2. *Antecello*, *anteco*, *antesto*, *antevertō*.

3. *Colludo*, *cuncino*, *consono*, *convivo*.

4. *Incumbo*, *indormio*, *indubito*, *inilo*, *ingemisco*, *inheres*, *insides*, *insidior*, *insto*, *inviso*, *insudo*, *insulto*, *invigilo*, *illacrymo*, *illudo*, *immineo*, *inimior*, *innotor*, *impendo*.

5. *Intervenio*, *intermisco*, *intercedo*, *intercido*, *interjaceo*.

6. *Obrepro*, *obductor*, *obrecto*, *obstrepro*, *obmurmura*, *occumbō*, *occurro*, *occursō*, *obsto*, *obisto*, *obvenio*.

7. *Præcedo*, *præcurro*, *præeo*, *præideo*, *præluco*, *præmitto*, *prævaldo*, *prævertō*.

8. *Succedo*, *succumbō*, *sufficio*, *suffragor*, *subcreasco*, *subleco*, *subfacio*, *subrepro*.

9. *Supervenio*, *supercurro*, *supersto*. But most verbs compounded with **SUPER** govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

*Proficio*, *proeum*, *placō*, *commodo*, *prospicio*, *caveo*, *metuo*, *timeo*, *consulo*, for *prospicio*. Likewise, *Necō*, *officio*, *incommodo*, *displacō*, *invidior*.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary ; as,

*Faveo*, *gratulo*, *gratifico*, *grator*, *ignosco*, *indulgeo*, *parco*, *adulo*, *plaudo*, *blandior*, *lenescor*, *palpor*, *assentor*, *subparasitor*. Likewise, *Auxilior*, *adminiculor*, *subvenio*, *succurro*, *patrocino*, *modcor*, *modico*, *opitulo*. Likewise, *Derogo*, *detraho*, *invidio*, *emulor*.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist ; as,

*Impero*, *præcipio*, *mando*, *moderor*, for *modign adhæreo*. Likewise, *Parco*, *ausculto*, *obedio*, *obsequor*, *obtempero*, *invenigero*, *morigeror*, *obsecundo*. Likewise, *Famulor*, *servio*, *inservio*, *inimistro*, *antestor*. Likewise, *Repugno*, *obsto*, *reluctor*, *renitor*, *resisto*, *refragor*, *adversor*.

4. To threaten and to be angry ; as,

*Minor*, *commenor*, *interminor*, *trascor*, *succentreo*.

5. To trust ; as, *Fido*, *confido*, *credo*, *diffido*.

To these add *Nubo*, *excellō*, *hæreo*, *supplicō*, *cedo*, *despère*, *operor*, *præstator*, *prevaiçor*, *resipio*, to promise ; *renuncio* ; *respondes*, to answer or satisfy ; *tempero*, *studeo*, *ago*, to apply ; *convicior*.

Exc. *Jubeo*, *juvo*, *lædo*, and *offendo*, govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erige, a/o, nutrio, amo, dilige, vove, crucio, aversa, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as, *Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem to go before, to excel.*

*Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. Adequare portæ Syracusas.*

*Adjacere mari, v. mare, to lie near.*

*Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.*

*Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.*

*Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.*

*Advolare ei, ad eum, rostra, to fly up to.*

*Adflare rei v. homini; rem v. hominem; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.*

*Allulari ei, v. eum, to flatter. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta. Li.*

*Apparere consuli, to attend; ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, appeara,*

*Appropinquare Britanniae, portam, ad portam, to approach.*

*Congruere alicui, eum re aliqua, inter se, to agree.*

*Domnari cunctis oris, Virg. in cœtera animata, to rule over. Ovid.*

*Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, to trust to, or in.*

*Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, to pardon me or my fault.*

*Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, to hang over.*

*Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum v. in eum, seized.*

*Incurrere toro; gladium, in gladium, to fall upon; labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, eorum, cogitationem, &c. to apply to.*

*Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, to indulge in. Ter.*

*Inhiare auro, bona ejus, to gaze after. Inasci agris, in agris, to grow in.*

*Inni ti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, to depend on.*

*Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fures; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, to insult over.*

*Latet res mihi, v. me, is unknown to me. Mederi ei; cupiditates, to cure.*

*Ministrare, ei, to serve; arma ei, to furnish.*

*Moderari, animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, to rule.*

*Nocere ei, rarely, eum, to hurt. Plaut.*

*Nubere alicui; in familiam; Nuptia ei & eum eo, to marry. Cio.*

*Obrepere ei & eum, to creep upon; in animos; ad honores.*

*Obstrepare auribus & aures. Obrectare ei laudibus, ejus, to detract from,*

*Obumbrare sibi vinea; solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui & aliquem.*

*Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.*

*Præstolari alicui & aliquem, to wait upon.*

*Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid, ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugna, concurre, cœo, alicui, for cum aliquo*; 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, disferre rei alicui, for a re aliqua.* We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se; and contendere, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.*

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo metuo, formido, horreo tibi, dete, & pro te, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but timeo, horreo, te v. ate, I fear or dread you as an enemy; So Consulo, prospicio cæcos hoc, I foresee this; Studere alicui, to desire; alicui, to favour; alicui rei, rem, & in re, to apply to a thing. So Æmulor tibi, I envy; te, I imitate; Ausculto tibi, I obey or listen to; te, I hear; Cupio tibi, I favour, rem, I desire; Fœnero & -or tibi, I lend you on interest; ads te, I borrow; Metulsi, ne non tibi istuc scerneret should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.*

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying Motion or Tendency to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Ex, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum rem, v. hominem.* Sometimes, however, in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *Il clamor caelo, for ad caelum, Virg.*

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

*Ama Deum,* Love God. *Reverere parentes,* Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own ; as,

*Ire iter or viam* : *Pugnare pugnam* or *pradium* ; *Currere cursum* ; *Canere cantilenam* ; *Vivere vitam* ; *Ludere ludum* ; *Sequi sectam* : *Somnare somnium*, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense ; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amabat*, Virg. *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per Id.* So *conspicuos arsit adulteri crines* Hor. *Sallare Cyclopa* ; *olet hircum* ; *Sulcos et vineta crepat mæva* Hor. *Pæc Hominem sonat* : *Sudare mella*, Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellepontio juncto, et Athone perfo- so, maria. ambulavisset, terramque navigasset*, sc. *per Cie.* Or when they have a kind of active sense ; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine*, Virg. *Calere jura* ; *Morere mortem* ; *Horret iratum mare*, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative ; as, *Ire itinere* ; *dolere dolore*, *vicem ejus* ; *gaudere gaudio* ; *mori v. obire morte* ; *vivere vita* ; *ardet virgine*, Horat. *Ludere aleam* v. d ; *manare, pluerre, virgine, stillare, sudare, aliquid* &c. *aliquo*, *Erubescere jura*, Virg. *origine*, Tacit. *equo-vehi*, Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense ; as,

*Abhorrer famam*, to dread infamy, Liv. a *libus* ; *ab uxore ducenda*, to be averse from ; Id. a *meis moribus abhorret*, is inconsistent with, Cie.

*Abolere monumenta viri*, to abolish, Virg. *illis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat*, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.

*Adolere penates*, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg.

*Ætas adolevit* ; *adolevit ad ætatem*, Plaut. *Declinare iectum*, to avoid ; loco ; *agmen aliquo*, to remove.

*Degenerare animos*, to weaken ; patri, to degenerate from ; a virtute majorum.

*Durare adolescentes labore*, to harden ; *Res durat ad breve tempus, enduret* ; *In ædibus durare nequeo*, stay or remain, Plaut.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quid*, *aliquid*, *quicquid*, *nihil*, *idem*, *illud*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *multa*, *pauca*, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *pro* or *propter* understood ; as, *Id lacrimat*, *Id succenset*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prona avertit*, sc. *se*, Virg. *Flumina præcipitant*, sc. *se*, Id. *Quicumque intenderat*, sc. *se* turned or directed himself. *Sallust.* *Obiit se mortem*, Ter. *Cum faciam virulæ*, sc. *sacra*, Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence ; as, *Reddes duke loquit, reddes redere decorem* ; for *dulcem sermonem, decorum ritum*, Hor.

XIX. *Recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliscor*, govern the accusative or genitive ; as,

*Recordor lectionis* or *lectionem*,  
*Obliscor injuriæ* or *injuriam*.

I remember the lesson.  
I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence ; as, *Memini videre virginem*, Ter. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset*, Cie.

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to make mention, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de* ; as, *Memini alicujus*, vel. *de aliquo*. So *recordor*, when it signifies, to recollect ; as, *Vestis scire ecquid de te recordere*, Cie.

#### 4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative ; as,

*Abundat divitiis*,  
*Caret omni culpa*,

He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destituor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget aris*, He needs money, Hor. *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa*, he is free from fault, Liv.

**XXI.** *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

*Utitur fraude*, He uses deceit.

*Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consisto, laboro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill; *pascor, epulor, nitor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus*; *imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor*; as, *Uti constitum*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur arvis*, Virg.

## § 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

### 1. Verbs governing two Datives.

**XXII.** *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Est mihi voluptati.*

It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others; as,

*Ducitur honori tibi*, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. *So Mihi mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitum pecori*, for *exitu*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dano*; *Dare siltam ei, nuptam, or nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei, se. id.*

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, uni, &c.* scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignori, se. alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui, se. suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curas, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui, &c. se. tibi.*

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming: as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandre*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri.*

### 2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

**XXIII.** Verbs of accusing, condemning, ac-

quitting and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Arguit me furti,  
Meipsum inertiae condemnans,  
Illum homicidii absolvens,  
Monet me officii,*

He accuses me of theft.  
I condemn myself of laziness.  
They acquit him of manslaughter.  
He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are *Accuso*, *ago*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *inquiro*, *arguo*, *defero*, *insimulo*, *postulo*, *alligo*, *astringo*; of condemning, *Damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*; of acquitting, *Absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*; of admonishing, *Moneo*, *admoneo*, *commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing instead of the genitive frequently have after them an ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare*, *postulare*, *absolvere eum criminis*, v. *capitis*; and *crimine*, v. *capite*; also *Absolvo me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere*, *punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo*, *reprehendo*, *taxo*, *traduco*, *vituperare columen*, *crimino*, *excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiae*. We sometimes also find *accuso incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare*, *inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertia*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Aggre eum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hæc*, *illud*, *istud*, *id*, *unum*, *multa*, &c. as *Moneo*, *accuso*, *te istud*. We seldom find, however, *Errerem te moneo*, but *erroris* or *de errore*; except in old writers, as *Plautus*.

**XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*; as,**

*Æstimo te magni,*

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *majoris*, *minoris*, *minimi*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *pili*, *assis*, *nihili*, *teruncii*, *hujus*.

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magna*, *permagna parca*, *sell. pretii*: and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo*, *puto*, *duco*.

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Hæc consulo boni*, *agui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, *vell. de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, *vell. pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo bono*, i. e. *status* or *censæ esse factum*, or *manus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

**XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,**

*Comparo Virgilium Homeri,  
Sum cuique tributo,  
Narræ fabulam eundo,  
Eripuit me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.  
Give every one his own.  
You tell a story to a deaf man.  
He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted) as,

*Legem lectionem tibi*, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me: *Sic vos non vobis feris aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas saepe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things. Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia*, & *ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, morte a or ex morte: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere ari*, in æs, or in ære; and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

*Circumdare mœnia oppido*, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls. *Intercludere comœtatum alicui*, or *aliquem comœtatu*, to intercept one's provisions. *Donare, prohibere rem alicui*, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

*Macrare hostiam Deo*, or *Deum hostid*, to sacrifice.

*Impertire salutem alicui*, or *aliquem salutem*, to salute one.

*Interdixit Galliam Romanis*, or *Romanos Gallid*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

*Inducere, exuere vestem sibi*, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

*Levare dolorem alicui*; *dolorem alicuius*; *aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

*Minari alicui alicui*, or sometimes *alicui aliquem*, Cic. to threaten one with any thing;

*Cœsari gladio*, scil.

*Gratulator tibi hanc rem*, hac re, in, pro, & de, hac re, I congratulate you on this, *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*, Liv.

*Restituere alicui sanitatem*, or *aliquem sanitati* to restore to health.

*Aspergere labem alicui*, or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine, Litare Deum sacris*, & *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

*Excusare se alicui* & *apud aliquem*, de re; *valetudinem ei*.

*Exprobare vitium ei* v. in eo, to upbraid.

*Occupare pecuniam alicui* & *apud aliquem*, i. e. *pecuniam sanari locare*, to place at interest, Cic.

*Opponere se morti*, & *ad mortem*, *Renunciare id ei*, & *ad eum*, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipio, tollo, traho, duco, verto incito, suscito*; also *hortor*, and *involto*, voce, *provoco, animo, stimulo, consermo, iacesso*; thus, *Ad laudem militæ hortatur*; *Ad præterem hominem traxit*, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*, Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui*, scil. se; *Cedere alicui*, scil. locum; *Detrahere alicui*, scil. laudem; *Ignoscere alicui*, scil. culpam. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, for *to me*.

#### 4. Verbs governing two accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Pescimus te pacem*,  
*Dedit me grammaticam*,

We beg peace of thee.  
He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito*, &c. Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio*.

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Regere rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*. to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. abs te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex* or *a te* or *te* without the preposition; *Interrogo consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum, tua divos*. Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbus eum artibus*, in v. *ab artibus*. Also *instruo ad rem*, v. *in re*, *ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem*. *Formare ad studium mentem studis, studia, ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod* ad or *secundum* understood.

### 5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

*Onerat naves auro,*

He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *onero cumulo, premo, opprime, obrua*. Of unloading, *leo, exonero*, &c. Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincto, impedito, irretito, illaquo*, &c. Of loosing, *solvō, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio*, &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*. Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corno, & calceo*. Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo*, &c.

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*. Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves, sc. viris*, mans the ships, Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ remeritaciæ implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

*Accusor furti,*  
*Virgilius comparatur Homero,*  
*Docet grammaticam,*  
*Navis oneratur auro.*

I am accused of theft,  
Virgil is compared to Homer.  
I am taught grammar.  
The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*;—*Eos creptum iri morti, morte*, a vel *ex morte*;—*pueros doctum iri grammaticam*;—*rem celatum iri mihi vel me*; *me celatum de iri re*, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio tis*.

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

*Tu laudaris a me*, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudes meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*; And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collicet*, Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interit*, id. So *cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a preliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, pectere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjuge*, Ovid. *Desertus eula*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabula distinguitur unda, qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juvenal.



The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est republica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores*, *a rege*, sc. *a rege vel. a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

*Neque cernitur ulli for ab ullo*, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for *a Vario*, Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quaeruntur*, for *a viris*, Cic. *VIDEOR*, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi*, neque *vita sororum*, for *a me*, Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor*, *amicior*, *cingor*, *accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induntur ventem or veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statuer, fletur, curritur, vivitur, ventitur*, &c. *a nobis*, *ab illo* &c. We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me*, vel *ab aliquo*: I or any person may live well. *Proviuntur est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally; as *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicium misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas*, *pugnatum est biduum*, *dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*; *Noctes vigillantur amarae*; *Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus auditur*, Tacit.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

### XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

*Expedit reipublicae,*

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

*Favetur mihi*, I am favoured, and not *Ego favoor*. *So nocetur mihi*, *imperatur mihi* &c. We find, however, *Hec ego procurare imperor*; *Ego cur invidoor*, for *imperatur invidetur mihi*, Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs *Potest*, *capit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

*Non potest credi tibi*, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest tri ad astra*. *Alterum laudi & gloriae invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res vel de hac re*, vel *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria*; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res vel de hac re*. *Doleo vel dolet mihi id factum esse*.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains*, *it shines*, &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omnibus bonis expedit reipublicam esse salutem*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, cecidit, contigit, ut ibi essemus*. These nominatives, *hec*, *illud*, *id idem*, *quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*, Cic., *Eadem licent*, Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciatur quod libet*, sc. *mihi*, Ter. *Stat cordis renovare, omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved, Virg.

**EXC. I. REFERT and INTEREST** require the genitive; as,

*Refert patris*, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

*Non mea refert*,

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cujus interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucret. *Incessus in gravida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maxime respiciam, interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*: as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert*, Persæ *quid rerum gerant*? Of what importance is it? &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra natura fines viventi, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim interest, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronia, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis*: *Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris*: So *Interest mea, est inter negotia mea*.

**EXC. II. These five, MISERET, PŒNITET, PUDET, TÆDET, and PIGET**, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Miseret me tui*,

I pity you.

*Tædet me vitæ*, I am weary of life.

*Pœnitet me peccati*, I repent of my sin. *Pudet me culpæ*, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse, or quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as *Scelerum si bene pœnitet*, scil. nos, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as *Ipsæ aut miseret*, Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudent*, Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scil. secundum or quod ad, Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet, and piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.: *Miseretur te fratrum*: *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

**EXC. III. DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT, and OPOR-  
TET**, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere*,  
*Non decet te risari*,

It delights me to study.  
It does not become you to sould.

Obs. 1. These words are sometimes used personally: as, *Purum parva decet*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiam si liceat*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative: as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

*Sibi quisque consulat oportet*, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fulse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Patius, fugit, praterit, idet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nulla esse ejusmodi caput, non te fuisse*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te uncta scribere*, Cic.

NOTE, *Attinet, pertinet, & spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad terminis spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

*Cupio discere*,

I desire to learn:

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quinctil. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus, equum fumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto destitit victam*, scil. *deceat*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Discere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *sanctitas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidebus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So *Discere, scribere, fidebus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle aium cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare for cantandi, or cantus*, Virg. In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti*, Gall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere, for artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, prater amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sententibus effluis*; *for vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui amatur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to fatuity; as, *Dubitat ita facere*, or more frequently, *an num or utrum ita facturum sit*; *Dubitavit an faceret necne*; *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Via me facere, or ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. To, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bibi, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*; and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain, Mitter queritum, or ut querar, &c.* Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

To in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth*; *To proceed*; *To conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth, &c.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own words; as,

*Amans virtutem*,

Loving virtue.

*Carens fraude*,

Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive Participles often govern the dative; particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

*Suspectus mihi*, Suspected by me; *Suspensiores regibus*, Sall. *Invidus mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invidior*, Suet. *Occulta, et moribus non invidis solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unscen, Cic.

*EXOSUS, PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exosa jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with, Suet. *vitam*, weary of; *Justin levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patrice*, Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Insidæ consuli*, Sall. *Domum reditiõis spe sublatâ*, Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*, Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Invenum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Trade ei penes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Mitt' mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curp, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *du* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *feri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas ædificandas locavi*, Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

**XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,**

<i>Studendum est mihi</i> ,	I must study.	<i>Aptus studendo</i> ,	Fit for studying.
<i>Tempus studendi</i> ,	Time of study.	<i>Scio studendum esse mihi</i> ,	I know that I must study.

But more particularly :

**I. The Gerund in DUM with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,**

*Legendum est mihi*, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So *Scio legendum est mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or, *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consultandum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood: as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, &c. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, nultes, est, se. vobis*, Liv. *Heliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, &c. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

**II. The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,**

<i>Tempus legendi</i> ,	Time of reading.	<i>Cupidus discendi</i> ,	Desirous of learning.
-------------------------	------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum conlœnandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copia spectandi comœdiarum*, for *comœdias*; Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ*, Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*, Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, &c. *fœminâ*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

**III. The gerund in DO of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,**

<i>Charta utilis scribendo</i> ,	Paper useful for writing.
----------------------------------	---------------------------

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo, scil. par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis cœsando factus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendu ensem*, for *wearing*, Virg.

**IV. The gerund in DUM of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,**

*Promptus ad audiendum,  
Attentus inter docendum,*

Ready to hear.  
Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa moriendum*, Quinctil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex, or in*; as,

*Pœna a peccando absterret,*

Punishment frightens from sinning.

\* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo augetur,  
Difessus sum ambulando,*

The memory is improved by exercising it.  
I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Titulum vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipse imperaret*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum*, vel *ad parendum potius*. Sic enim antiqui loquebantur, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit videndo*. I. e. *dum videtur*, Virg.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of*; as, *He is employed in writing letters*: or *in the writing of letters*; But it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

*Gerunds turned into participles in dus.*

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund,  
*Petendum est mihi pacem,  
Tempus petendi pacem,  
Ad petendam pacem,  
A petendo pacem,*

By the Participle or Geruntive.  
*Pax est petenda mihi,  
Tempus petendæ pacis.  
Ad petendam pacem.  
A petenda pax.*

}  
or more  
frequently

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive; *Inta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani, extinguendi*, Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiundo labori idoneus*, Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*, Tass. *Area firma templis ac porticipus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus v. habilis*, Ovid. *Nutus miseris ferendis*, Ter. *Litteris dandis vigetare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos adstruere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris effluere pleniorum*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor, uxor, abutor, fruor, fungor, and potior*; as, *Spes poiundi urbe, or potiundæ urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subvertendi tibi, and rex tu.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

### 1. The Supine in um.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

*Abiit ambulatum,*

He hath gone to walk.

So *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum facta arbitror, te id admonitum venio*, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *Il se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*. He is bent on his own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebis illam sine tuâ operâ iri deducum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebis iri* (a te vel aliquo) *deducum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filium nuptum*; *Canitum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias hiematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit opem opem*: or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandum opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

## 2. The Supine in u.

**XXXVIII.** The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

*Facile dictu*,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu factum*, *visusque hæc limina tangat; intra quam puer est*, Juv. *Difficilis est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas v. nefas est dictu*; *Opis est scitu*, Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is, sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc ob. onatu redco*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villæus) from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu*, *cognosci*, or *ad cognescendum*; *Res facillis ad credendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

### I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

**XXXIX.** Adverbs are joined to verbs and participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

*Bene scribit*, He writes well.

*Fortiter pugnans*, Fighting bravely.

*Servus egregie fidelis*, A slave remarkably faithful.

*Satis bene*, Well enough.

Obs. 2. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

*Homerus planè orator*; *planè noster*, *verè Metellus*, Cic. So *Hodie mane*; *eras mane*, *heri mane*; *hodie vespere*, &c. *tam mane*, *tam vespere*.

Obs. 3. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

*Nec non senserunt*, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et senserunt*, And they did perceive: *Non poteram non examinari metu*, Cic. Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum*, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined, 1. *Apprimè*, *admodum*, *vehementer*, *maximè*, *per-*

*quam, valde, oppide, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, *Cic. perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppide pauci*, very few; *perfacile est*, &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimus nimium longi sumus; parum firmus multum bonus*, *Cic.* Adverbs in *un* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humani*, *Liv.*

**QUAM** is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Fens quam familiariter*, very familiarly, *Ter.* So *quam severe*, very severely, *Cic. Quam late*, very widely, *Cæs.* *Tum multa, quam, &c.* as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armat*, as great as possible, *Sall.* *Quam maximas gratias agit*, *agum primum quam sapissime*, *Cic.* *Quam quæque pessime fecit*, *tam maxime tutus est*, *Sall.*

**FACILE**, for *haud dubie*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to the superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facile doctissimus, facile princeps, v. præcipuus*, **LONGE** to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longe eloquentissimus Plaut.*, *Cic. Pedibus longe melior Lyons*, *Virg.*

**2. CUM**, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; **DUM**, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as *Dum hæc aguntur; Egrito, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*, *Cic.* *Dum eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, *Ovid.* **DUM** and **DONEC**, for *usquequum* until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista cognosco*, *Cic.* *Haud desinam, donec perfecere*, *Ter.* So **QUOAD**, for *quamdiu*, *quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe. Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad passim & liceret; quoad progredi poteris amenia*, *Cic.* But **QUOAD**, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thesalonice esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, *Cic.* but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, *Cic.* The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *feri* is elegantly added to *quoad* as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus feri, possit*, *Cic.* *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quoad attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

**3. POSTQUAM** or **POSTEAQUAM**, after, is usually joined with the Indic. **ANTEQUAM**, **PRIUSQUAM**, before; **SIMUL**, **SIMULAC**, **SIMUL ATQUE**, **SIMUL UT**, as soon as; **UBI**, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj.; as, *Antequam dies dicam*, *Cic.* *Simulac pensens*, *Virg.* *Simul ut videro Curionem*, *Cic.* *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, *Liv.* *Ubi semel quis perperaverit, ei credi postea non oportet*, *Cic.* So **NÆ**, truly; as *Næ ego homo sum infelix*, *Ter.* *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius jam consulisses*, *Cic.* But **NÆ**, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura, Plaut.* *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, *Ter.* *Ne te annuum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, *Liv.*

**4. QUASI**, **CEU**, **TANQUAM**, **PERINDE**, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim quasi ego sum, senex*, *Plaut.* *Adversari rupto ceu quondam turbine veni confidunt*, *Virg.* *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboratur*, *Cic.*

**5. UTINAM**, or **SI**, **UT** for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea, res ei voluptati sit*, *Cic.* *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, *Virg.* *Ut illum dil deæque perdant*, *Ter.*

**6. UT**, when, or after takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quam*, or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* *Plaut.* ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, *Plaut.* ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, *Cic.*

**7. QUIN** for **CUR** **NON**, takes the indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem stultitiae vestræ?* *Cic.* ¶ For **IMO**, nay or but, the indic. or Impera. as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi*, *Ter.* ¶ For **UT**, **NON**, **QUI**, **QUÆ**, **QUOD** **NON**, or **QUO MINUS**, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis, res, quin difficilis fiet quum invitatus facias*, *Ter.* *Nemo est, quin maleat; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, *I* cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserissimus*, *Cic.*

## THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

**XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,**

*Pridie ejus diñi,*  
*Ubique gentium,*  
*Satis est verborum,*

The day before that day.  
Every where.  
There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interca. postea, inde, tunc*; as, *Interca. hoc*, in the mean time: *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis ubi-ubi, &c.* Also *Es, huc, hucine, undc, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quo, quovis, &c.* also, *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum, vel gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci, eo audacia, recordia, misertiarum, &c.* to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimè*; as, *Abundè gloriae, affatim divitiarum, largitur auri, satis loquentia, supientia parum est illi vel habet.* He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *inrar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Instar mentis*, like a mountain, Virg. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæ*; *que abundè adeptus* the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res, locus, or negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interca loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie, ejus, diei*, seldom *diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinaces, natalem ejus, abolitionem ejus, &c.* rarely *Kalendarum, &c.*

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

*En hostis, or hostem; Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strabo, Ter.* *Ecce duas* (scil. aras.) *tibi Daphni*, Virg. In like manner he construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

**XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,**

*Omnium optime loquitur.*  
*Convenienter nature,*  
*Venit obviam ei,*  
*Proxime castris or castra;*

He speaks the best of all.  
Agreeably to nature.  
He came to meet him.  
Next the camp.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS:

### 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.

**AD** *astra, to the stars; religari ad asserem, to be bound to a plank; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c.* at or on; *ad portam, ostium, fores, at, before; ad urbem, Tiberim, near, at; ad templa supplicatio, in; ad summum, at most, or to the top; ad summam, on the whole; Cic.* *ad ultimum, extremum, at last, finally; ad. v. in speciem, to appearance; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, for, with respect to; Cic.* *ad vivum, sc. corpus, to the quick; ad judicem agere, before; nihil ad Cæsarem, in comparison of; numero ad duodecim, to the number of; omnes ad unum, to a man; ad hoc, besides; ad vulgi opinionem, according to; homo ad unguem factus, an accomplished man; herbæ an lunam messæ, by the light of, Virg.; ad tem-*

*pus venit, at; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, for; ad tempus consilium capiam, according to, Cic.* *ad decem annos, after; annos ad quinquaginta natus, about; Cic.* *nebula erat ad multum diei, for a great part of the day; Liv.* *ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genus; ad manus esse, at; ad manus venire, to come to a close engagement; ad libellam deberi, to a farthing, no more and no less; ad amussim, exactly; ad hæc visa auditaque, upon seeing and hearing, these things, Liv.*

**AD** seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, *Ad duo millia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, about, Liv.*

**APUD** *forum, at; apud me cœnabis, at my house; apud senatum, judices, v. aliquem dicere, before;*



• apud majores nostros, *among* ; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of* ; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo apud illum* ; *I have credit with him* ; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, locum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, v. -um ; CONTRA hostes, *against* ; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *toward* ; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Leria adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS *vel* CITRA flumen, *on this side* ; citra necessitatem, *without* ; Ede citra cruditate, bibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about* ; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros ; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without* ; nemo extra te, *besides* ; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among* ; inter & super cenam, *during, in the time of* ; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations* ; Sall. Inter tot annos, *in* ; Cic. Inter diem, *whence*, interdiu, *in the day time* ; inter se amant, *they love one another* ; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, intra paucos annos, *within* ; intra famam est, *less than report*, Quinct.

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles*.

OB lucrum, *for gain* ; ob oculos, *before* ; ob industriam *scilicet* de industria, *on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or* quem penes, *in the power of* ; Penes te es ? *Are you in your senses ?* Hor.

PER agros, *through* ; per vim, per

scelus, *by* ; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after* ; post tergum, *behind* ; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began*.

PRÆTER te nemo, *nobody besides, or except* ; præter casam fugere, *beyond* ; præter legem, morem æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond* ; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above* ; præter ripam ire, *along near* ; præter oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of* ; propter æquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to*, Ter. secundum litus secundum aurem vulneratus est, *near to* ; in actione secundum vocem, vultus plurimum valet ; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to* ; Prætor secundum me decrevit, *sententiam dedit, for, in my favour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along*.

SUPRA terram, *above*.

TRANS mare, *over, beyond*.

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond*.

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added **CIRCITER**, **PROPE**, **USQUE** and **VERSUS** ; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid day* ; prope muros, *near the walls* ; usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, *as far as* ; Orientem vertus, *towards the east*. But in these ad is understood ; which we find sometimes expressed ; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

## 2. PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from* ; a puero, *vel* pueris, a pueritia, in cunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood* ; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper* ; a manu, *scilicet* servus, an amanuensis *or clerk* ; ad manum, *a waiting man* ; a pedibus, *a foot man* ; a latere principis, *an atten-*

*dant*. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.* ; fores a nobis, *for nostræ*. Injuria ab illo, *for illius*. Ter. a cena, *after* ; Secundus, tertius a Romulo ; ictus ab latere, *on or in* ; a senatu stare, *for, in defence of* ; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, *a pecunia & militibus imparatus, as to,*

*with respect to*, Cic. *Est calor a sole*; *omissiores ab re*, *too careless about money*; *a villa*, *mercenarium vidi*, Ter.

**ABSQUE** causa, *without*; *absque te esset*, *recte ego mihi, vidiissem*, i. e. *si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you*, Ter. *Absque* is chiefly used by comic writers; *sine*, by orators.

**CLAM** patre & patrem, *without the knowledge of*.

**CORAM** omnibus, *before, in presence of*.

**CUM** exercitu, *with*; *testis mecum est annulus*, *in my possession*, Ter. *cum prima luce*, *at break of day*; *cum imperio esse*, *in*; *cum primis*, *in primis, in the first place*; *cum metu dicere*, *cum lætitia vivere*, *cum cura*, &c. Cic. *We say, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*; *rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus*.

**DE** luna caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; *De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est*, *of*; *de loco superiore*, *from*; *de die*, *by day*; *de nocte*, *by night*; *de integro, anew, afresh*; *de v. ex improviso, unexpectedly*; *de v. ex industria, on purpose*; *de meo, at my expense*; *Id de lucro putato esse, clear gain*; Ter. *de v. ex compacto agere, by agreement*; *de transverso, cross-wise, althwart*; *de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, according to*; *qua v. hac de causa, for*; *homo de plebe*; *templam de marmore, of*; *de scripto dicere, to read a speech*; *de Filio emit, from*, Cic. *De servis fidelissimus*; *de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit*, Nep. *Robur de exercitu*, Liv. *Adolescens de summo loco*, Plaut. *De procul aspicere*, Id.

**E** foro, *ex ædibus, from, out of*; *e contrario, v. contraria parte, on the contrary*; *e regione, over against*; *e republica, e re alicujus, for the good of*; *statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, from, after*; *e vestigio, out of hand, immediately, poculum ex auro*; *ex equo pugnare, on horse-back*; *facere pugnam ex commodo, on advan-*

*geous ground*; Sall. *; diem ex die expectare from day to day, day after day*; *ex ordine, in order*; *magna ex parte, for the most part*; *ex super vacuo, superfluently*; *ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, according to*; *so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat*; *ex v. de more, ad v. in morem alicujus: Ex animo, from the heart*; *Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, on account of*; *ex usu est tibi, of advantage*; *ex eo die, since, ex amicis certis certissimus, of, or among*; *ex pedibus laborare, to be ill of the gout*, Cic. *E re nata, as the matter stands*, Ter. *Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, by, Id.*

**PRO** gloria certare, *for*; *Rati noctem pro se, favourable to them*; Sall. *Hoc est pro me*, Cic. *pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, before*; *pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, according to*; *est pro prælore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, for, instead of*; *pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, to one's ability or power*: *Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, in comparison of, considering*; Cic. *pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, as I deserve*; *pro se quisque, uterque, &c. for his own part*; *pro rata parte, pro portione, in proportion*; *pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo aut; pro rupto sædus habet, for, as, so, pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo duco. Pro occiso, relictus est, Cic.*

**PRÆ** se pugionem tulit, *before*; *speciem præ se boni viri fert, pretends to be*; Ter. *præ lacrymis non possum scribere, for, because of*; *illum, præ me contempsit, in comparison of: So the adv. præut; as, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.*

**PALAM** populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

**SINE** labore, *without*; *sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela,*

impensa, &c. ; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sedes, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, up to the hilt. *Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing. ; as, *Cummarum tenuis*, as far as *Cuma* : or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two ; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenuis*, up to.

We also find *Coreyfe tenuis*, & *ostius tenuis*, Liv. *Colchis tenuis*, Flor. *Pectoribus tenuis*, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added *PROCU* ; as, *Procul domo*, far from home ; but here a is understood, which is also often expressed ; as, *Procul a Patria*, Virg. *Procul ab ostensione*, Quinct. *Calpa est procul a me*, Ter.

### 3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Acc. and Abl.

**XLIV.** The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified ; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative ; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

**IN** when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative ; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative ; as,

*In urbem ire*, into ; *amor in patriam*, in to benignas, towards ; *in lucem*, until day ; *in eam sententiam*, to that purpose, on that head ; *in rem tuam est*, for your advantage ; *in utramque partem disputare*, on both sides, for and against ; *litura in nomen*, on Cic. *potestas in filium*, over ; *in aliquem dicere*, against ; *mirum in modum*, after ; *in pedes stare*, in aurem dormire, on ; *in os laudare*, to before ; *in v. inter patres lectus*, into the number of ; *in vulgus probari*, spargere, &c. among ; *crescit in dies*, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, every day ; *in diem postera*, proximum, decimum, against ; *in diem vivere*, to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow ; *Est in diem*, will happen sometime after, Ter. *Induciae in duos menses datae*, in hunc diem, annum, &c. for ; *Ternis assibus in pedem*, v. in singulos pedes, transegit. *He bargained for three shillings a foot*, or for every foot ; *So in jugerum*, militem, capita, naves, &c. *In medimna singula*, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.

*In porta navigo*, in tempore, in esse in potestate, v. in potestatem, honore v. honorem, mente v. mentem ; *in manu v. manibus esse* ; *habere tenere*, in one's power, on hand ; *in amicis*, among ; *in oculis*, before ; *Occisus est in provinciam*, for in provincia Sall. *In pueritia*, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, for puer or pueri, when a boy or boys, &c. *Hoc in tempore*, Nep. *In loco fratris diligere*, for ut fratrem, Ter.

*SUB terras ibit imago*, sub aspectum cadit, under ; *sub ipsam futurus*, near, just before. *Hor. sub lucem*, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of day, &c. ; *sub idem tempus*, about ; *sub eas literas recitatae sunt tuæ*, sub festos dies, after, Cic.

*SUB muro*, rege, pedibus, &c. under ; *sub urbe*, near, Ter. *sub ea conditione*, v. -em, on or with.

*SUPER Numidium*, above, beyond ; *super ripas*, upon ; *super hæc* ; *super morbum etiam fames affixit*, besides, Liv. *super arbore*, fronde super viridi, upon ; *super*

hac re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning*; alii super alios trucidantur, Liv. Super coenam, super vinum & epulas, *for* inter,

during, Curt. Nec super ipse sua molitur laude laborem, *for*, Virg. SUBTER terram vel terra, *under*.

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense: as *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversas, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & cum*, are by some thought to be always adverbs having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus, cellam*, *for intra*, Liv. *Intus, templi diuum*, sc. *in* Virg. *Simul his, sc. cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

*A patre, a regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs* before q and t; as, *abs quibus homine*. Ter. Some phrases are used only with e; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vertigio, e re mea est, &c.* Some only with ex; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore magna ex parte, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodes, scil. ob vel propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera jura*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e vel de*, Cæs. *Vina promens dolis*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordia* sc. *ædem*, Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church; Campum Stellatim divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti milia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere seruum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evermore virtus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

**XLV.** A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

*Adeamus scholam,*  
*Excamus schold.*

Let us go to the school.  
Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the word is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam; Exire ex schola; Adgredi aliquid, or ad aliquid; Ingredi orationem vel in orationem; Inducere animum, & in animum; Evadere undas & ex undis; Decedere de suo jure, decedere viâ vel de via; Expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, & ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, alloqui, allatrare aliquem, not ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem; accelerare flumen; circumvenire aliquem; praterire injuriam; abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum*;) *transducere exercitum, furium, &c.* Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto, &c.*

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco; & a, de, ex loco; abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu; Derisere sententiâ, a vel de sententiâ, Excidere manibus, de, vel e manibus, &c.*

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

*Egredi urbe or urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis or insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus; pugnam vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

### 3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

**XLVI.** The interjections *O* *heu* and *proh*, are constructed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

*O vir bonus et bone!* O good man! *Heu me miserum!* Ah wretched me!  
So, *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aliam) *lupum!* Cic.

**XLVII.** *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

*Hei mihi!* Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!  
Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ab*, *vob*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.  
Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either enclitic or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu quam me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

#### 1. PRICE.

**XLVIII.** The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

*Emi librum duobus assibus,*  
*Constitit talento.*

I bought a book for two shillings.  
It cost a talent.

So *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale*, &c. *Nocet emptæ dolore voluptas*, Hor. *Spem pretio non emam*, Ter. *Plurimi auro veniunt honores*, Ovid.

¶ These genitives *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, are excepted; as,

*Quanti constitit*, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *pauvo pretio, impenso, pretio vendere*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo* are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*, Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nax stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; malè, pejus, vilius, vilissimè; Valde carè æstimas: Enit domum prope ultimo carius, quam æstimabat*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus vâleret*, Liv.

#### 2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

**XLIX.** The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Im-  
pe-  
tr-  
ant.

the  
in E  
ed

Se  
re,  
ed in  
prop  
pre  
with  
Vire.

and  
con-

Apr.  
18, 1891  
one, c  
morn  
Oct.  
18, 1891  
Vign

Obs.  
se. cr.  
Ving  
Hun  
doubt  
the (p)  
Paul's  
sing  
sing aff  
sing the

X  
ove  
ell

6-7  
and  
at

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition in understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed thus, we do not say *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or in *Romæ celebri urbe*, or in *Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine* with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative when the question is made by *ubi*?

## 2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? *Whither*? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

*Venit Romam,*  
*Prefectus est Athenas.*

He came to Rome.  
He went to Athens.

Obs. 2. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*. Horat.

Obs. 3. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving where motion, to a place is implied; as *Romam, erat nuntiandum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hæc nuntiavit domum Albani*, Id. *Messanæ lucras dedit*, Cic.

## 3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? *Whence*? or *Qua*? *By or through what place*? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

*Discessit Corintho,*  
*Laodicæ iter faciebat,*

He departed from Corinth.  
He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by or through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

## *Domus* and *Rus*.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

*Manet domi,*  
*Domum revertitur,*  
*Domo arcessitus sum,*  
*Vivit rure,* or more frequently *ruri,*  
*Rediit rure,*  
*Aldit rus,*

He stays at home.  
He returns home.  
I am called from home.  
He lives in the country.  
He is returned from the country.  
He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi, militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

*Domi et militiæ*, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground,

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paterna*; So, *Ad domum, paternam*: *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius* and *alienus*; as, *Domus mea* *vixit*, Cic. *Regiam domum* *comportant*, Sall.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo*, or *in domo Capitis*.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? *Natus in Italia in Latio, in urbe, &c.*

Quo? *Abit in Italiam, in Latium, in or ad urbem, &c.*

Unde? *Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*

Qua? *Transit per Italiam per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Roma*, for *Romæ*; *ad Romam*, *ex Roma*, &c.

*Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, *exa. Creta jussit considere Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybia* for *in Lybia*; *non ante Tyra*, for *Tyri*. Id. *Æn.* iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Roma*, *Numidique facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

#### 4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

*Murus est decem pedes altus,*

*Urbs distat triginta millia, or triginta*

*millibus passuum,*

*Iter, or itinere unius diei,*

The wall is ten feet high.

The city is thirty miles distant.

One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus*: *Patet, porrigitur, eminet*, &c. The names of measure are *pes*, *cubitus*, *ulna*, *passus*, *digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denam pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe convegit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quantum milliarius*, v. *milliare convegit*, Cic. *Ad quantum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

*Hoc lignum excoedit illud digito. Toto vertice super est*, Virg. *Britannia longitudinis latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus superat*.

#### 5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando*? When? time is put in the ablative; as,

*Venit hora tertio.*

He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,



*Mansit paucos dies,  
Sex mensibus absuit.*

He staid a few days:  
He was away six months.

\* Of *this*, Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how long* is put in the accusative.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In presentia*, or *in præsenti*, scil. *tempore*; *in vel ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt domæctæ*; *ad horam destinatum*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturas* ait, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions; *hoc, illud, id, istud, ætatis, temporis, horæ*, &c. for *hac ætate, hoc tempore*, &c. And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt* sc. *tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad soon*; *Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus ed ventum est, expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Melas accepti tuus lûcras*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Ex ante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentes jam annos amplius unis moribus et namquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old. Nep.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*. It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*: but here, *ex*, or *id*, may be understood.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

*Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.
<i>Femina quæ,</i>	The woman who.
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.
<i>Vir cui parces,</i>	The man whom he obeys.
<i>Vir cui est simile,</i>	The man to whom he is like.
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.
<i>Vir quem miserer,</i>	} The man whom I pity.
<i>cujus miserer, vel miseresce,</i>	
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>	
<i>cujus vel cujus interest, &amp;c.</i>	whose interest it is, &c.

*Plural.*

<i>Viri qui.</i>	
<i>Feminae quæ.</i>	
<i>Negotia quæ.</i>	
<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>	
<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>	
<i>Iri qui scribunt.</i>	
<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>	
<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>	
<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>	
<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>	
<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>	
<i>Viri quibus parces.</i>	
<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>	
<i>Viri a quibus.</i>	
<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>	
<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>	

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

**Obs. 1.** The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

*Vir qui (vir) legit; vir quem (virum) amo:* Sometimes the latter; as *Quisquisque nabit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat, Cie. Eunuchum, quem delicti nostri, quas turbas dedit. Ter. sc. Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus deo exire possent, Cie.* Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quæ hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quæ homines, &c. Hor.*

**Obs. 2.** When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

*Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur, Sall. Animal, quem vocamus hominem, Cie. Cogito id quod res est, Ter.* If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as *Pompeius se afflicto, quod mihi est summo dolori, scil. Pompeium se affligere, Cie.* Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus, qui for sceleratus, Ter. Abundantia carum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant, scil. negotia, Sall. Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitia puto, facit ut te moniam, scil. negotium, Ter. In omni Africa, qui agebant; for in omnibus Africa, Sallust. Jug. 89. Non dissidentia futuri, quæ impe arisset, for quod, Ib. 100.*

**Obs. 3.** When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio, scarcely*

*facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either ; as, *I am the man who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence ; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love : " it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou or you, thy or your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuis*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective ; as,

*Omnes laudate fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingento praeditum.* Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words : as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur ;* l. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem, &c.* Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure homines necandi, quae multa sunt, scilicet tempora.* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted ; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit : Tyrti tenere coeni,* scilicet *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case ; as, *Bocchus cum petitibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna assuecunt, Romanos invadunt ;* for *quique* in *priore pugna non assuecunt*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed : as, *The letter I wrote, for the letter which I wrote ; The man I love, to wit, whom.* But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent ; as, *Eam aliquam agas eorum, quorum consulati, for quae consulati agere, or quorum aliquid agere consulati.* Cic. *Reveritue in quem ne accepti locum, for in locum, in quo.* Ter. And, iv. l. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, is, e, hic, is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui* ; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book ; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men ; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *quanti, quantus, quotus, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives ; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum.* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them ; as, *Tanta est multitudo quantum urbs capere potest ;* and are often applied to different substantives ; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas.* Cic.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals ; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons ; as, *Our Father, which art in heaven ;* and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which* ; as, *This is what he wanted ; that is, the thing which he wanted.*

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages ; as, *Quod cum ita esset.* When that was so ; not, *Which* when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English ; as, *Quem dicunt ita esse ?* Who do they say that I am ; not *whom*. *Quem dicunt advenire ?* Who do they say is coming ?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of it

verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quas legeris*, I want to hear what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quas legisti*, I want to hear, what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

*Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor: Quid queris. Librum, sc. quero. Quod heri videris? Scrid.* Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus, not mel.* *Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus.* *Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis.* *Quis fecit? Nescio: Alunt Petrum fecisse.* *Quomodo valet? Bene, male.* *Scriptistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c.* *An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minus, &c.* *Charrea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum.* *Et ed est indutus? Factum, Ter.* Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**LVIII.** The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,  
Nec legi nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quam*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as,

*Nulum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, Cic. Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur. Id.*

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

*Interest mea et reipublicæ; Constitit asse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se dederet, et in mediam aciem irruerat, Cic. Vir magni ingenii summæque industriæ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis, Sall. Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex, Pers.*

Obs. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel* by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as,

*Et legit, et scribit: so tum legit, tum scribit; or cum legit, tum scribit, He both reads and writes; Sive legit, sive scribit, Whether he reads or writes: facere quæ vera, quæ falsa; Incurrere quæ consules ipse, quæ exercitum, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.*

**LIX.** Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,*

*Peter and John, who are learned.*

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic.* In English the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*: but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*; but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic.* Where *Athenæ & urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, *Liv.*

Obs. 3. If the substantive signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, *Sall.*

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life: because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantive to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin Grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

*Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. Sociis et rege recepto, Virg. Et ego in culpa sum, et tu.* Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault: *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt; or nihil hic deest nisi carmina. Omnia quibus turbari solita eras civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo milia et quadringenti cæsi, Liv.* This construction is most usual; when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus, ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor, for vescimur, Horat.*

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

*Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Verg.* The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum Atlas, melius, magister prohibebant, Ter. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur, Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

**LX.** The conjunctions *ut, uo, licet, ne, utinam, and dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

*Lego ut discam,  
Utinam sapias,*

*I read that I may learn.  
I wish you were wise.*

**Obs. 1.** All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamebrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quam, quantopere*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anme, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescis quis sit*; I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit*; *Viden' ut alta fiat nive candidum Soracis?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego, Plaut. Haud scio, an amat, Ter. Vide avortia quid facit. Id. Vides quam turpe est, Cic.*

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur, &c. Sall.* But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So *Est qui sunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or substantive.

**NOTE,** *Haud scito an recte discrim,* is the same with *dico, affirmo, Cic.*

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or*; also, *so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall, &c. Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest* and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though*; as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely," or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever*; for, *though* he charm, &c.

**Obs. 2.** When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich, &c.*

**Obs. 3.** *ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI QUANQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive; *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT*, although, always has it; as, *Ut queras, non reperies, Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIBEM*, are usually construed with the indicative; *SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD*, and

QUA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for dummodo, provided has always the subjunctive; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. And QUIPPE, for nam, always the indic.; as, *Quippe veter satis*.

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quavis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tamquam*; *Adeo* or *ita*,—*ut*: in English. *As*,—*as*, or *so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante*,—*quam*. In some of these, however we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censeo*, *saxdeo*, *liet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac*, or *facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem*; *Nolo mentiare*; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. 4. 47. scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it*; *I beg you would come to me*, scil. *that*.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *Quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done: as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn: *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

*Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illum, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not;—*ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

### LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

*Dulcior melle*, sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then, instead of the

ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

*Dulcior quam mel, scil. est. Amo te magis quam illum, I love you more than him, that is. quam amo illum, than I love him. Amo te magis quam ille, I love you more than he, i. e. quam ille amat, than he loves. Plus datur a me quam illo. sc. ab.*

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

*Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, Cæs. scil. quam. Plus quingentes celaphos infregit milii, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant, sc. quam, Liv.*

*Quam* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

*Triumphus clartor quam gratior, Liv. Or the prep. pro is added; as, Proclium atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur, Liv.*

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione, spe, æquo, justo, dicto*; as,

*Credibili opinione major, Cic. Credibili fortior, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. Gravius æquo, Sall. Dicto citius, Virg. Majora credibilitulimus, Liv. They are often understood; as, Liberius vivebat, sc. justo, too freely, Nepos.*

*Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

*Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for neminem, Ter. Crasso nihil perfectius, Cic. Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum. So quid nobis laboriosius, for quis, &c. Cic. We say, inferior patre nulla re, or quam pater. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, ceter ceteroque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque, &c.*

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, there is none better than *he*, *not*, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit. Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter.

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative); as,

*Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. Altero tanto major est fratre, i. e. duplo major, he is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. Sesquiped minor, a foot and a half less; Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. Ter tanto peior est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius, Plaut. Quinques tanto amplius, quam quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c. thus, Quo plus habent, eo plus rident, The more*



they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*. The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam habemus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

*Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,*

*O pere peracto, ludemus,*

{ The sun rising, or while the sun riseth,  
darkness flies away.  
Our work being finished, or when our  
work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitia præstabilis est, exceptâ virtute; Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus, amplius; Nobilium vltâ victuque mutata, mores mutari civitatum puto*, Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam iniuriam, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, at ab auguriis, simul aves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum*, Liv. *Bellicæ, depositis clypeo paulisper et hæc, Mars ades*, Ovid, Fast iii. l.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*. The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered*; 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered*; 3. *By conquering the enemy*; 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt*; or, *Romani, libertate adeptâ floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus*, is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassa Minervâ*, without learning, Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ*; *vixis fratribus*; *te hortatore*; *Cæsare impulsore*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*, Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*, Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, Hor. *Parto quod avebas*, Id. In such exam-

ples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*, Plaut. *Absente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Laetos fecit se consule fastos*, Lucan, v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*, Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas natus æ accusatur*, Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently in the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

## APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

## I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ASPIRARE** ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, sc. ei, *to infuse*, Virg.

**DESPERARE** sibi de se; salutem, salutis, de salute, *to despair of*.

**LEGARE** aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, i. e. testamentum relinquere. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

**DELEGARE** res alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, Cic.

**LEVARE** metum ejus & ei, eum meum, *to ease*.

**MUTARE** locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, i. e. sordidam togam induere, Liv. vestem cum aliquo; Ter. fidem, *to break*.

**OBNUNCIARE** comitiis vel concilio, i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratui; i. e. prohibere nec cum populo agat, Cic.

**PRONUNCIARE** pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

**RENUNCIARE** aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ amicitiam ei, *to give up*; maneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium, *to divorce*.

**OCCUPARE** aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*;

se ad negotium, *Plaut.* pecuniam, alicui v. apud aliquem grandi sœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates*, Liv.

**PRÆOCCUPARE** salum, portas, Cicilium, *to seize beforehand*, Nep.

**PRÆJUDICARE** aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

**ROGARE** aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramentum, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitibus rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

**ABROGARE** legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take of a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

**ABROGARE** id sibi, *to claim*.

**DEROGARE** aliquid legi v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

**EROGARE** pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on*.

**IRROGARE** multam ei, *to impose*.

**OBROGARE** legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old*.

**PROROGARE** imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off*.

**SUBROGARE** aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause or to put one in place of another*.

**SPECTARE** orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex

censu, *animus alicujus ex suo, to judge of.*

**SUPERARE** hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars capti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived, Virg.*

**TEMPERARE** iras, *ventos to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*: mihi sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

**VACARE** cura, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

**VINDICARE** mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

**DARE** animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*; Plaut, jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis palæstræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sting, fall, &c.* cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam scenori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctori-tati senatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipitem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*; Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a lawsuit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum, alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*;

pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*; verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam *to enter on a journey*; viam ei *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in questionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni *to ascribe every thing to delivery*; Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*; Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

**SATISDARE** judicatum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid*, Cic.

**STARE** contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, *to side with, to be of the same party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*: in sententiâ; pecto, conditionibus conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; stare, v. constare animo, *to be in his senses*: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, *It is not owing to me that, &c. must be paid*; Liv. Mihi stat alere mortem desinere, *I am resolved, Nep.*

**ADSTARE** mensæ, *to stand by*; ad mensam, in conspectu.

**CONSTARE** ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to consist of*; secum, *to be constant with*, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, *cost me*; non constat ei color, *his colour comes and goes*; auri ratio constat, *the sum is right*, Constat, impers. *It is evident, certain, or agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

**EXTARE** aquis, *to be above*, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, *to remain*, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

**INSTARE** victis, *to press on the vanquished*; rectam viam, *to be in*

*the right way; curram Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.*

OBSTARE ei, to hinder.

PRÆSTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensus, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorē, v. benevolentiam alicui, to shew; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me enim facturum, I will be answerable; In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexa obligavit, In recovering, or

in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancippii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Præstat impers, i. e. it is better; Priesto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spera, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; iudicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter.; fidem alicui, to trust or believe; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem, v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; religioni, to have a scruple about it; So, habere aliquid questui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene v. graviter, to be well or ill; se parè et duriter, to live, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. procerto, to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, v. in despiciatui, to despise; excusatum, to excuse; susque deque, to scorn, to slight; Ut res se habet, stands, is; rebus ita se habentibus, in this state of affairs; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce.

ADHIBERE diligentiam, celerita-

tem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, to use; in convivium v. consilium, to admit; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrois, to give; aures versibus, to bore with taste; cultum & precibus, to offer, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.

JUBERE legem, to vote for, to pass; regem, to choose; aliquem salvere, to wish one health; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, divorced, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re Doctus, adj. utriusque linguae; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latinè; & Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aqua, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de isthoc, to take care of, Ter. plus, to be more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris, consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor videre, methinks I see; visus sum audire, methought I heard; mihi visus est dicere, he seemed; Quid tibi videtur? What think you? Si tibi videtur, if you please; videtur fecisse, guilty, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei, vel eum, to envy.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, to foresee; ei, to provide for; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

**SEDERE** ad dextram ejus ; in equo, *to ride* ; toga bene sedet, *sits* ; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

**ASSIDERE** ei ; Adherbalem, *to sit by*, Sall. Assidet insano, *is near or like to*, Hor.

**DISSIDERE** cum aliquo, *to disagree*.

**INSIDERE** equo, & in equo, *to sit upon* ; locum. Liv. in animo, memoria, *to be fixed*.

**PRÆSIDERE** urbi, imperio, *to command*, Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

**SUPersedere** labore, litibus ; paguræ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over*.

**PENDERE** promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, *to depend* ; de ex, ab & in arbore ; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

**IMPENDIT** malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens*.

**SPONDERE** & despondere filiam alicui, *to betroth*.

**DESPONDERE** domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of*, Cic. animo & -is, *to promise, to hope* ; animum & -os, *to despair* ; Liv.

**RESPONDERE** ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer* ; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes* ; ad spem.

**SUADERE** ei pacem, v. de pace ; legem, *to speak in favour of*.

**DOLERE** casum ejus ; de, ab, ex, in, pro re ; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo ; caput dolere a sole.

**VALERE** gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*, lex valet, *is in force*, quid verbum valet, non video, *signifies* ; valet decem talenta, *or of ten talents, is worth* ; vale vel, valeas, *farewell* ; or ironically, *goodby with you*.

**EMINERE** aliqua re, vel in aliqua re, inter omnes ; super cætera, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel* ; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*, in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for*.

**TENERE** promissum ; se domi, oppido, castris, sc. in, *to keep* ; modum, ordinem, *to observe* ; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember* ; linguam, *but not a man*,

*silentium, se in silentio, to be silent* ; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed* ; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*, Cic. causam, *to gain* ; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of* ; terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach* ; risum, lachrymas, *to restrain* : se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows* ; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by laws they keep*, Cic. veneratori in manifesto furto, *to be seized* ; tenet fama, *prevails*.

**ABSTINERE** maledictis, v. a, *to abstain* ; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, segrum a cibo, *to keep from* ; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me* ; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for mei fratris est, belongs to* ; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinet, *reach*.

**SUSTINERE** personam judicis, nomen consularis, *to bear the character* ; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, *to withhold assent* ; rem in noctem, *to defer*.

**MANERE** apud aliquem ; in castris ; ad urnem ; in urbe ; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

**MERERE** laudem ; bene, male de aliquo ; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier* ; iustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

**HÆRERE** lateri ; tergis, v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt* ; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

**ADHÆRERE** & adhærescere justitiæ ; ad turrim ; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

**MOVERE** castra, *to decamp* ; bella, *to raise* ; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe* ; e senatu, *to degrade a sena-*

*tor*; risum vel jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; somnium ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

**FAVETE** ore, *vel lingua*, sc. mihi, *attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen*.

**CAVERE** aliquid, aliquem, *vel ab aliquo*, *to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo *vel per al-*

*quem de re aliqua, to get security on*; mihi praedibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, *see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, *vel mea cautio est, I must take care*.

**CONNIVERE** ad fulgura, Suet. *to wink*; in hominum sceleribus, *to take no notice of*, Cic.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### Verbs in IO.

**FACERE** initium, finem, pausam, finem vitae; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, *to make*; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, *to show*, Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, *to pretend*, Cic. res alienum, v. contrahere confiare, *to contract debt*; animum, *to encourage*; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to lose*; naufragium, *to suffer*; sumptum, *to spend*; gratum alicui, *to oblige*; gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault*; gratiam legis, *to dispense with*; justa vel funus alicui *to perform one's funeral rites*; rem, *to make an estate*; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; foedus, v. inire, icere, serire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. *to make a league*; moram alicui, *to delay*; verba, *to speak*; audientiam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, *to trouble*; aliquid missum, *to pass over*; aliquem missum, *to dismiss or excuse*; ad aliquid, *rarely*; alicui, *to be fit or useful*; ratum, *to ratify*; planum, *to explain*; pulam suis, *to make known*; Nep. stipendium pedibus, v. equo, & merere, *to serve in the army*; sacra, sacrificium, v. rem divinam, *to sacrifice*; reum, *to impeach*; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play*, &c. copiam consilii ei, *to offer advice*; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, *to grant leave*; fidem, *to procure or give credit*; periculum, *to make trial*; potestatem sui, *to expose himself*; Nep. aliquem loquentem, v. loqui *to suppose or represent*; Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, *to be a pirate*; argentariam, medi-

cinam, mercaturam, &c. *to be an usurer, a physician, &c.* versuram, *to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest*, Cic. cum v. ab, aliquo, *to side with*; contra v. adversus, *to oppose*; nomen, v. nomina, *to borrow money*; and also, *to settle accounts*; i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, *to write it where something was before*, Cic. pedem, v. pedes, *to trim the sails*, Virg. Fac ita esse, *suppose it is so*; obvius fieri alicui, *to meet*; ne longum, v. longa faciam, *ut breve faciam, not to be tedious*; equus non facit, *will not move*, Cic. Fac velle, sc. me, *suppose me to be willing*, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

**AFFICERE** aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominia, poena, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c.* Affectus ætate, morbo, *weakened*.

**CONFICERE** bellum, *to finish*; orationes, *to compose*; Nep. cibum, *to chew*; argentum, *to raise, to get*; also *to spend*, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hostium, *to destroy*; alterum, Curiatium, *to kill*; Liv. Qui stipendiis collectis erant, i. e. emeriti, *had served out their time*, Cic.

**DEFICERE** animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi vel me, *fails*: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of*.

**INFICERE** se vitro, *to stain*: Infectus, part. *stained*; infectus, adj. *not done*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny*.

**OFFICERE** alicui, *to hinder or*

*hurt*; Diogeni apicanti, *to stand between him and the sun*; auribus, *visui, to stop or obstruct*; Umbra terre soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

**PRÆFICERE** aliquem exercitui, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, & progressus laedere, *to make progress*.

**REFICERE** muros, templa, sedes, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

**SUFFICERE** laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*, Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

**SATISFACERE** alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to satisf.*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

**JACERE** aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to cast*.

**ADJICERE**, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

**CONJICERE** se in pedes, v. fugam; *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

**INJICERE** manus ei, *to lay on*; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuius ipso aspectu, Nep.

**OBJICERE** se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, *to oppose or expose*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

**REJICERE** tela in hostes, *to throw back*; judices, inela, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Roman, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr., *to delay*, Cic.

**SUBJICERE**, ova gallinæ, *to set an hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare; odio civium, *to expose*; bona Pompeii v. fortunas hastæ vel voci & sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire *to be sold*, Liv.

**TRAJICERE** copias v. exercitum,

fluvium, *Reflespontum, vel trans fluvium, to transport*; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

**CAPERE** conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, sagam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* angurium, v. auspiciam, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris; terram, *to alight*: insulam, summam, sc. loca, *to reach*: spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*: virginem Vestalem, *to choose*: animentum, spiritum, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*: aliquem, consilio, perfidia, *to catch*: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Edea vix nos capit, *the house hardly contains us*. Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*: capitar loois, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

**ACCIPERE** pecuniam, vulnus cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem de Socrate, *to hear*: id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum, ac, atque, Ter ridem v. rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*: aliquem bene, v. male, *to treat*: cum male acceptum in Midiam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*: nomen, i. e. ad preten dam ad mittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem, v. excusationem, Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, popular.

**CONCIPERE** verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*: aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

**EXCIPERE** eum hospitio, *to entertain*: fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem patrà, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; mo-



tas futuros, *to persuade*; *Eos homines excipio, I except*; *virtutem excipia immortalitas*; *urbulentior annus excipit, succeeded*; *sic excipit regia Juno, replied, Virg.*

**INCIPERE**, occipere, *to begin*. *Pericipere fructus, to reap.*

**PRÆCIPERE** futura, *to foresee*; *gaudia, spem victoriæ, to anticipate*; *pecuniam mutuan, to take before the time, Cæs. lae, to dry up, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, to order*; *artem ei, to teach.*

**RECIPERE** aliquid, *to receive*; *urbem, to recover*; *eum tectis, to entertain*; *se v. pedem, to retreat*; *se domum, to return*; *se, mentem, animum, to come to one's self again, to recover spirits*; *in se, to take charge*; *alicui, to promise*; *se ad frugem, to amend*; *senem solum, to give a seat to, Cic.*

**RAPERE** vel trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; *in jus, to bring before a judge*; *partes inter se, to share*; *Liv. Subdivum, to reveal, Horat.*

**UO.**

**EXUERE** vestes sibi, *se vestibus*; *jugum sibi, se jugo, to cast off*; *fidem, sacramentum, to break*; *mentem, to change, Virg. hostem castris, to beat from.*

**RUERE** ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros, *Ter. spumas, to drive or toss, Virg.*

**LUERE** poenas capitis, *to suffer*; *res alienum, to pay, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, to expiate, to atone, or suffer for.*

**FLUERE** amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually, Cic.*

**STATUERE** stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; *exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, to make one a public example*; *aliquem, capite in terram, to set or place, Ter.*

**CONSTITUERE** coloniam, *to settle*; *agmen paulisper, to make to stop or halt*; *Sall. in digitis, to count on one's fingers, Cic. urbem, to build, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, appointed, resolved, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, makes, constitutes. Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, a good constitution, Id.*

**DESTITUERE** aliquem, *to forsake*;

*spem, to deceive*; *propositum, to give over, Ovid deos pactâ mercede, to defraud, Hor.*

**INSTITUERE** aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint, Cic. collegium laborum, sacra, to institute, to found, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ Græcis literis, to instruct*; *naves, to build, Cæs. sermonem, to enter upon, Id. animum ad cogitandam, to settle, antequam pro Mucena dicere instituo, I begin, Cic.*

**PRÆSTITUERE** petitori, *qua actione illam uti oporteat, to prescribe to the prosecutor, what form of process he should use, Cic. tempus ei, to determine.*

**RESTITUERE** exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; *oppida vicosque, to repair*; *aciem inclinatum, to rally*; *prælium, to renew, Liv.*

**SUBSTITUERE** aliquem in locum ejus, *pro altero, to substitute or put in the place of, Cic.*

**STRUERE** epulas, *to prepare*; *insidias, mendacium, to contrive*; *odium, crimen alicui, vel in aliquem, to raise against*

**BO**

**SCRIBERE** sua manu, bene, valenter, *epistolam alicui, v. ad aliquem*; *bellum, v. de bello*; *milites, to enlist*; *supplementum militibus, to recruit them*; *hæredem to make one his heir*; *dicam ei, to raise an action against one*; *nummos, to give a bill of exchange*; *de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.*

**ASCRIBERE** aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. -e, to make free.*

**DESCRIBERE** aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; *partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, to distribute, to divide*; *vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare*; *jura, i. e. dare v. constituere*; *censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.*

**INSCRIBERE** literas alicui, *to correct a letter*; *librum, to entitle, or name*; *ædes mercede, to put a ticket on one's house to let, Ter.*

**PROSCRIBERE** bona alienjus, *ædes suas, auctionem, to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; *aliquem, to banish or outlaw.*

**RESCRIBERE** alicujus literis *v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquem, to write an*

*anncer*; pecuniam, to pay money by bill; legionem ad equum, to set foot soldiers on horseback, Cæs.

**SUBSCRIBERE** exemplum litterarum, to write below; causæ, to join or take part in an accusation; Cæsaris iræ, to favour, Ovid.

CO.

**DICERE** aliquid, v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad v. apud aliquem; in aliquem, against; ad aliquid, in answer to; sententiam, to give an opinion; jus, to administer justice, to pronounce sentence; multam ei, to amerce or fine; diem ei, to appoint a day for his trial before the people; prodicere, to put it off; causam, to plead; testimonium, to give evidence; non idem, loqui est ac dicere, to harangue; Cic. sacramento, seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath.

**ADDICERE** aliquid ei, to call out at an auction, to sell; servituti, v. in servitutum; to sentence or adjudge to bondage; bona, to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor; se alicui, to devote himself to one's service; aves non addixerunt, v. abdidixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen; pretio addictam habere fidem, to be corrupt, Cic.

**CONDICERE** operam alicui, to promise assistance; cœnam alicui, v. ad cœnam, to purpose supping with one without invitation.

**EDICERE** alicui, to order; delectum, to appoint a levy; prædam militibus, to promise by an edict; justitium, diem comitiis, vel comitia consulibus creandis, to appoint.

**INDICERE** bellum, justitium, to proclaim war; legem tibi, to appoint, Cic. cotus in domos tribunorum, to summon, Liv. indicare, to shew; Indictus, an adj. not said; causâ indictâ, v. non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard; me indicente, hæc non sunt, not telling, Ter.

**INTERDICERE** alicui, aliquid v. aliqua re; sœminis usum purpure, to forbid, or debar from; ei aquâ & igne, v. aquam et ignem, to banish; male rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdicti solet, Cic. interdicti non poterat socero gener, discharged the company of, Nep.

**PREDICERE** alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn.

**DUCERE** in carcerem v. vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; sofiam, murum, sulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on, Virg. ætatem, diem, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summons before a judge; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, tere, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab v. ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id laudi, laudem, v. in laudem, oftener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, ac. usuras, vel. fœcus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month, or at 12 per cent. per annum; binis centesimis fœverari, to take 24 per cent. per annum, Cic. ducere, longas voces in fletum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. ilia, to pant like a broken-minded horse, Hor.

**ADDUCERE** aliquem in judicium, arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habenas, to straiten the reins.

**CONDOCERE** aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tunc laudi, in v. ad rem, is of advantage.

**DEDUCERE** naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

**EDUCERE** gladium v. vagina, to draw; florem Iulius, to lead out; copias in aciem, Cic. filiam, to educate, oftener educate; in astra, to extol, Hor. cœlo, Virg.

**INDUCERE** tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, v. in animum, to persuade himself; seuta pelibus, to cover, Cæs. soleas pedibus, v. in pedes, to put on; colorem picture, to varnish, Plin.

*nomina, to cancel or raise, to rub out.*

**ODDUCERE** exercitum, *to lead against; callum dolori, to blunt it; sepulchrum sensibus, to cover.*

**REDUCERE** aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *vel alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.*

**PRODUCERE** testes, *to bring out; funus, to attend; sermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer; servos vendendos, to bring to market.*

**SUBDUCERE** se a custodibus, *to steal away; naves, to draw up on shore; cibum ei & deducere, to take from; summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.*

**PARCERE** sibi, labore, *to spare, &c. a cædibus, to forbear; aurum natis, Virg.*

**ASSUESCERE** rei alicui, v. re aliqua, in v. ad hoc, *to be accustomed; mentem pluribus & assuesfacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. to accustom. So, insuesco rei d. re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.*

**ASCISCERE** legem, *to decree; hencæ plebiscitum. ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to assume; socios sibi, ad societatem accleris, to associate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.**

**CONSCISCERE** mortem v. necem sibi, *to kill one's self; fugam sibi, to flee, Liv.*

**DISCERE** aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without ex: Dedicere, to forget what he hath learned; Ediscere, to get by heart.*

**DESCENDERE** de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to, Cic.*

**DO.**

**UDERE** aleâ, v. -am, *to play at dice; par impar, at even and odd; operam, to lose one's labour.*

**ALLUDERE** alicui, ad aliquem; Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock.*

**EVADERE** insidias, -iis, vel ex, *to escape; in muro, to mount; Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, to what*

*they will turn out; Otarus evasit, became*

**CEDERE** multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, to give place; vitâ, e vita decedere, to die; loco, to turn bankrupt; Hereditas cedit mihi, falls to; Cedit in proverbium, becomes.*

**ACCEDERE** oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach; ad conditiones, to agree to; Ciceroni, sententiæ, v. ad sententiam ejus, to agree with; ad Ciceronem, to go to; ad reipublicam, to bear the questorship, or the first public office; ad amicitiam Philippi, to gain the friendship of, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, added, Ter. Robur accessit tetati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, ed, accedit quod, is added.*

**ANTECEDERE** alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel.*

**CONCEDERE** ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, to retire, to go; fato, naturæ, vitâ, to die; in sententiam ejus, to come into one's measures; in conditiones, to agree to: Liv.*

**DISCEDERE** transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least.*

**INTERCEDERE** legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law: pecuniam pro aliquo, to become surety: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, there is, &c.*

**SUCCEEDERE** ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam ætatem; in pugnam, to come to.*

**CADERE** altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & item perdere, to lose one's cause, to be cast; in v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, is incapable of, Cic. Homini lacrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.*

**ACCIDERE** genibus, v. ad genus,

to full at; auribus v. ad aures, to come to; alicui, cusu, propter opinionem, to happen; accidit in te inuid verbum, applies, Ter.

TENDERE vela, to stretch; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. to lay snares; arrum, to bend; iter, cursum, to direct; ad altiora, in coelum, to aim at; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, to pitch a tent; Manilius tendit divellere nodos, tries, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, to take heed; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, to exert one's self; aliquid ab aliquo, to ask earnestly; inter se; amori, poet. for cum amore, to strive; causas, sc. inter se, to compare; Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, to understand; rem pluribus & luculentioribus verbis, to express; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, to apply; latendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem, v. litem alicui r. in aliquem, also impingere, to raise a law suit against one; telum ei, v. in eum, to shoot at; manum v. digitum in aliquid, to point at; aliquo, sc. ire, to go to; officia, to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; poenat, to suffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, to hang; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, to keep in suspense; edificium, to arch a house; naso adunco, to sneer at, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, to hide, or shut up one's self among books; se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcerem, to imprison; carmen, to compose; lumina, to close; Ov. Jura, to establish;

terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, to bury.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to surrender; Deditis præceptor, & studiis, fons of; vino epistulae, engaged in, Nep. deditis opera, on purpose.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, to publish; ovum, to lay; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, to sound, sing, &c. munus gladiatorum, to exhibit a show of gladiators; nomen to mention; factus, to bring forth; extremum spiritum, to die; exempla cruciatû in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

ORDERE passulum foribus, to bolt the door

PRONERE arcem hostibus, to betray; aliquid posteris, & memoris, to hand down; genus ab aliquo, to derive; flammam, interregem, to appoint; aliquot dies nuptiis, to put off; Ter. exemplum, to give to posterity, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, to revive; animam v. vitam, to die; Latine, verbum verbo, to translate; matrem, i. e. referre, to resemble; epistolam alicui, to deliver.

SUBDERE calcar equo, to spur; spiritus alicui, to encourage.

CREDERE rem; homini, to believe; aliquid alicui, to trust; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet; itaque crede, si, &c. I suppose, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hostes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ararium, to spend; odium, i. e. diiungere, to drop; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

GO.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ: equos curru; amnem ponte, to make a bridge

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, to build an addition to one's house; animum ad studia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultum, gladium, enssem, to draw; frondes, to lop off; glandes, baccas, to beat down; rem;

to waste one's fortune, Hor. *littus*, to touch, to brush or graze upon, Virg.

**TANGERE** rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

**ATINGERE** Britanniam navibus, to reach; reges, res summas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, to be related to: forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concerns.

**FINGERE** orationem, to polish; oratorem, to form; se ad arbitrium alterius, to adapt: Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingant fortunam, Nep.

**FRANGERE** navem, to break; navem, to suffer shipwreck; foedus, fidem, to violate; sententiam ejus, to refute, Cic. hostem, to subdue.

**AGERE** gratias, to give thanks; vitam, to live; praedas, to plunder; fabulam, to act a play; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph; nugas, to trifle; ambages, to beat about the bush; stationem, custodiam orbis, to be on guard; rimas, to chink, to leak, to be rent; causam, to plead; de re, to speak; radices, to take root; cuniculos, to undermine; undam, to raise a steam; animum, to be at the last gasp; alias res, to be inattentive; festum diem, natalem, serias, &c. to keep, to observe; actum, v. rem actam, to labour in vain; censum, & habere, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. forum, to hold a court to try causes; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one; hence actor a plaintiff; in hereditatem, to claim; cum populo, to treat with, to lay before; decimum aetatis annum, he is ten years old; id agitur, that is the question; libertas agitur, v. de libertate, is at stake; actum est de libertate, is lost; actum est, illicit, all is over; actum est de pace, was treated about; cum illo bene actum est, he has been lucky, or well used; hoc age, mind what you are about; Civitas laeta agere, for erat, Sall.

**ADIGERE** milites sacramento, ad v. in iurjurandum, in sua verba, per iurjurandum, to force to enlist; ar-

bitrum, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

**COGERE** copias, to bring together; ad militiam, to force to enlist; senatum, to assemble; in senatum, sc. minis pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend; agmen, to rally, to bring up; lac, to curdle; jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.

**EXIGERE** foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require: sarta tecta, sc. et, h. e. sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata to require that the public works be kept in good reparation; Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, to inflict; sua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts; ævum, vitam, annos. to spend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; calumniam ad perpendiculari, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight; monumentum, to finish, Hor. tempus & modum, to settle, Virg. comœdiam, to disapprove, to hiss of, Ter.

**REDIGERE** aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raise money; hostes sub imperium, to reduce.

**LEGERE** oram, litus, to coast along; vela, to furl the sails; halitum, to catch one's breath; milites, to enlist; aliquem in senatum in Patres, to choose; sacra, to steal, to commit sacrilege. HO.

**TRAHERE** obsidionem, bellum, to prolong; purpuram, to spin; aliquid in religionem, to scruple; navem remulco, to tow.

**DETRAHERE** aliquem, to draw down; alicui vel de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame; aliquid alieni, to take by force; laudem, v. de laudibus: novem partes multæ, to take from the fine, Nep.

**EXTRAHERE** diem, to spin out, to spend; certhuen, bellum, judicium, to prolong.

**VEHERE**, vehens, invehens, invectus, curru, quadrigis, &c. riding in a chariot; invehi in portum ex alto, to enter; in aliquem, to inveigh against; provehi longias, to proceed too far,

## LO.

**CONSULERE** rem, v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; e i. *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consultitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

**APPELLERE** classe in Italiam, *vel classem, to land on*; se aliquod, Ter. ad villam nostram navis appellatur, Cic. *animus ad philosophiam, to apply*.

**ANTECELLERE** ei, *rarely cum*: excellere aliis, super, inter, preter alios aliqua re, v. in re, *to excel*.

**TOLLERE** animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clumores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

## MO.

**ADIMERE** claves uxori, *to divorce*; annulum v. equam equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

**DIRIMERE** litem, controversiam, *to determine*.

**EXIMERE** aliquem servitio, noxae & vinculis, & culpa, de numero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolo, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

**INTERIMERE** se, *to kill*.

**REDIMERE** captivos, *to ransom*; pecuniam de censuibus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

**SUMERE** in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex, v. de eo, *to take*; poenas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam villi-rem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, vel in rem insumere, *to bestow pains*; sumo tantum, vel hoc mihi, *I take this upon me*.

**PREMERE** caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia e-

jus, *to follow*; litus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

**EXPRIMERE** succum, *to press out*; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effugiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

**IMPRIMERE** aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

**REPRIMERE** se, & reprehendere v. retinere, *to check*.

## NO.

**PONERE** spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ora, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, nobis ante; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to stake or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*; ferocia corda, *to lay aside*; aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, *to calm*: hominem coloribus, saxo, *to paint*, engrave, Hor. pecuniam in fenore, *to lay out at interest*: templa, *to build*, Virg. Venti posuere, are hush'd, Virg. Pon esse victum eum, Ten Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.

**COMPOSERE** carmen, literas, &c. *to compose*: lites, *to settle*: bellum, *to finish by treaty*: parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare*: manus manibus, *to join*, Virg.

**DEPONERE** v. ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy*: imperium & demittere, *to lay down a command*.

**EXPONERE** rem, *to set forth or explain*: trumentum, *to expose to sale*, Cic. pueros, foetus, *to leave to perish*, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, *to land*.

**IMPOSERE** onus alicui v. in aliquem: aliquem in equum, *to set upon*: personam v. partes duriores ei, *to lay a task or duty on one*: alicui, *to impose on, to deceive*, Nep. honorem ei, *to confer*: vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail*: Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, *to finish*: ponem flu-

mini, *to make a bridge*, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, *to expose*: pignori, *to pledge*: munus fronti, ante oculos, *to put*, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose*, *to set before*: edicta, legem in publicam, i. e. publicè legenda effigere: congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money*.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*: testamentum, v. subicere, *to forge*.

CANERE aliquem, *to praise*: signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm*, *to give the signal for battle*: receptui, rarely unum, *to sound a retreat*: tibia, *to play on the pipe*: ad tibiam, *to sing to it*: palinodium, *to utter a recantation*.

STERNERE lectos, *to spread or cover the couches*: equos, *to harness*: viam, *to pave*: æquora, *to calm*, Virg.

#### PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear*: somnos, quietem, *to sleep*: viam, iter, *to go*, Virg. opera alienus, *to censure*: labores, virtutes, *to diminish or obscure*, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate*: vocem v. silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. ex portis, *to break out*; stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passion*; nubem, *to break*, Virg.

#### RO.

QUERERE bonum, gratiam sibi, *to seek or gain*, Cic. sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise*; ex aliquo; & in aliquem, *de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack*: in dominum de servo quæri nolerunt Romani, Cic.

INQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after*: aliquem capitis, v. -te, *to accuse or try for a capital crime*.

GERERE res, *to perform*; negotium, malè, *to manage*; consulum, *to bear to manage*; se bene vel malè, *to behave*; exercitum,

*to conduct*, Sall. st. moiem ei, vel morigerari, *to humour*; civem, se pro cive, personam alienam, *to pass for, to bear the character of*; inimicitias vel amicitiam cum aliquo, *to be at enmity or variance with*.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against*.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest*, *to hint*; sumptus his rebus, *to supply or afford*: Horatium Bruto, *to choose in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise*, *to spread accusations*.

CONSERERE manus, manum, certamen, pugnam, eum hostibus, inter se, *to engage*.

ASSELERE aliquid *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, *to free*; in servitatem, *to reduce*; divinam majestatem, *to claim*.

#### TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo rarely eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. *to ask*; urbem Romam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for*; aliquem sagittâ, lapide, *to aim at*; consulum poenas ab aliquo, *to punish*.

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses*; in eum competit actio, *an action lies against him*, Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution*; bona lege, v. prosequi lite, *to recover by law*; castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriâ, *to call to mind*; aliè, *to trace from the beginning*. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, *I have*; si vita suppetet, *if life shall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote*; auleum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; alios, *to throw the dice*; senatum, *to dismiss*; timorem, *to lay aside*; in acta, *to register*, *to record*; sanguinem, vel emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; signa timoris, *to shew*; vocem, *to utter*, *to speak*; habenas, v. remittere, *to slacken*; manu et emittere, *to free a slave*; filium emancipare, *to free a son from the power of his father*; sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke*; inferias manibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods*; rem, v. de re, *to omit*; mitto rem, *I say nothing*.

of fortune. *Ter.* in possessionem bonorum. *to give the possession of the debtor's effects; misti orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.*

AMITTERE litem, v. causam: vitam, sidem, lumina, aspectum, *to lose, Cic*

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit; equum immittere, & permittere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admiserunt, have not given a favourable omen, Liv.*

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, to entrust; puelium, to engage; exercitum puelle, rem in casum accipitis eveniendi praeii, to risk a battle, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance, or by the ears; rem eo, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis to match or pair; committere, ut, to cause; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek redress by law*

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise or agreement, &c.*

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to disband; exorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudiam ad eam remittere, to divorce.*

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.*

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow; divisa cætera, to leave, Horat. se in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem: rem suffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.*

REMITTERE animum, *to ease; calces, tela, to throw back: ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. to abate; debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive; justiciam, to discontinue; pugnam, to slacken; remittit, explorare, neglectis, Sallust.*

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, *to lower; se v. animum, to submit, to humble; percussores alicui, to suborn assassins.*

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to pass over.*

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight; terga, to fly; in imo, to overthrow; solum, to go into banishment; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimen, to blame; in superbiam, to impude; Platonem, Latine Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, to translate; pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb; terram, to plough; crateram, to empty, Virg. Sulum, to correct; Horat. Salus vult causa in eo vertitur, depends; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, a whole year, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, prosper*

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe; in enim verberibus, morte, &c. to punish.*

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to. Virg. oras, to arrive at; aures, mentes, animum, v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to; in aliquem, oftener animadvertere, to punish*

ANTEVERTERE, ei, *to come before; damnationem veneno, to prevent; rem rei, to prefer, Plaut.*

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecunia, *to embezzle, to cheat; candelabrum, to steal, to pilfer; promissum & receptum, &c. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit, treacherously withheld, Cic.*

PRÆVERTERE, & -i, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip; desiderium plebis, to prevent; metum supplicii morte voluntaria, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, to put before, Id*

SISTERE vadium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial; nec satis posse, nor could the state be saved; Liv*

ASSISTERE, ei, *to stand by; adfore; contra, super eum.*

CONSISTERE in digitis, *to stand on tiptoe; in ancoris, ad anchoram, to ride at anchor; frigore, to be frozen; Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, depended on; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.*

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in*



dolos, negotium, Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge.*

OBISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose.*

RESISTERE ei, *to resist.*

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still; sumptui, to bear.*

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay; versurâ, to pay a debt by borrowing from another, Ter. Fidem, to break a promise, or according to others, to perform, Ter. And IV. 1. 19. litem aestimatam, to pay the fine imposed on him, Nep. Votum, to discharge;*

obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege; navem e portu, to set sail; epistolam, v. resignare, to break open; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, to free from; solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devicta, prose; solve metus, dismiss, Virg.*

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break.*

RESOLVERE vocem, v. ora, *to break silence, Virg. jura, to violate; vectigal, to take off taxes, Tacit. In pulverem, to reduce to.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, *to hear from one; de aliquo, about one, also from one, as, serpe hoc audiui de patre, for ex patre, Cic. Audire bene v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, to be well spoken of, to have a good character; rexque paterque audisti, have been called, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.*

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law, Liv. in circulum, into a company, Nep. Hereditas ei venit, he has succeeded to an estate; ei usui venit, happened, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, occurs, Cic.*

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to; ego et frater convenimus, copiam conve-*

nient, *will meet together; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, I and my brother are agreed; sævis inter se convenit ursis, Juv. Ipsi secum non convenit, vel ipse, he is inconsistent; pax convenit, vel conventa est, is agreed upon; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. condiciones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus v. ad pedes conveniunt, fit, fruit; hoc in illum convenit. Catilinam interfectum esse convenit, ought to have been slain, Cic. Convenire in manum, the usual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called mætres familias.*

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive; cum aliquo, to be of one's opinion; bene vel malè de eo, to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree; So dissentire; et ab aliquo, to disagree; ne vita orationi dissentiat, Senec.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly; se candidatum, to declare himself a candidate for an office; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, to give an account of, to declare how much one has; indicium, to promise to make a discovery.*

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se, some-

times alicui, ad v. apud aliquem: aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party, Cic. Assequi, consequi, to overtake; gloriam, to attain. Consequi hereditatem, to get, Cic.*

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

**MITI** hastâ ; in cubitum, *to lean* ; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on* ; ad gloriam, ad v. in summa, *to aim at* ; in vitium, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive* ; gradi-

bua, *to ascend*.

**UTI** eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one* ; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds* ; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

**ESSE** magni roboris, v. -no, -re ; ejus opinionis, v. ea opinione ; in maxima spe : in timore, in luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in vel cum imperio ; magno periculo, v. in periculo ; in tuto ; apud se, in his sensus ; sui juris, v. mancipii, sui potens, v. in sua potestate, *to be at his own disposal* : Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, sc. mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause* ; bene, male est mihi, *with me* ; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you* ; Quid est tibi, sc. rei, *What is the matter with you* ? Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see* ; religio est mihi id facere *I scruple to do it* ; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturum sit ut admiserit, &c. *for si velit*, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuta sulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi ; *I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Cassius querere solebat. Cui BONO FUERIT : Omnitus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

**ADDESSE** pugne, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present* ; alicui, *to favour, to assist* ; scribendo, v. esse ad scribendum, *to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate*, Cic. consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to*, Nep.

**ABESSE** domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent* alicui, v. deesse *to be wanting, not to assist* ; a sole, *to stand out of the sun* ; sumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv. abesse a persona principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*, Nep. Paulum v. parum absuit quin orbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum

absuit a cupiditate pecuniae, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

**INTERESSE** convivio, v. in convivio, *to be at a feast* ; anni decem interfuerent, *intervened* ; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, *this is the difference* ; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

**PRÆESSE** exercitui, *to command* ; comitiis, judicio, questioni, *to preside in or at*.

**OBSSE** ei, *to hurt, to hinder*.

**SUPERESSE**, *to be over and above* ; alicui, *to survive* ; modo vita supersit, sc. mihi, *if I live* ; super est, ut, *it remains, that*.

**IRE** ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war* ; in jus, *to go to law* ; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with* ; viam v. via ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis, *it passes*.

**ABIRE** magistratu, *to lay down an office* ; a conspectu, *to retire from company* ; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth* ; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain* ; decem menses abierunt, *have past*, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non ferēs hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation*.

**ADIRE** periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life*.

**EXIRE** vitâ, e, v. de vita, *to die* ; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore Id. tela, *to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Veienti populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

**INIRE** magistratum ; suffragium, rationem, consilium, pugnari, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin* ; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, *to gain his favour* : Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of* ; luti we seldom say, Ineunte die, noc-

te, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years.*

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctionis iudicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos, nostras, *to visit, to go through*, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum v. diem, *to die.*

PRÆIRE alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, *to repeat or read over before*; alicui voce, quid iudicet, *to prescribe or direct by crying*, Cic.

PROIRE in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, *is past*, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses.*

SUBIRE murum, vel -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; laborem vel -i, onus, poenam, periculum, crimen, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into.*

VELLE aliquem, sc. alloqui vel conventum, *to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causa, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny*, Liv. Quid sibi vult; *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri: si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, *I will admonish them again and again*, Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, sc. esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose or make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiā de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend or declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to*

*be fond of*, Ter. manus, in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent*, as Dr. and Cr. Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires.*

CONFERRERE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium, ad vel in rem, & impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, vel ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quint.

DEFERRE situlam vel sitellam, *to bring the ballot box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; rarely alicui; causam ed patronos; honores ei; gubernacula rei publicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu, nonien alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas, sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE vel transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge.*

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, sc. pedem, *to advance*; litem vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life.*

**OFFERRE** se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, to expose, to present.

**PREFERRE** legem, to carry through, to pass it.

**PREFERRERE** faciem ei, to carry before; salutem ei reipublice suis commodis, & anteferre, antepone, to prefer. **Prælatu** equo, riding before.

**PROFERRE** imperium, pomerium, terminos, to enlarge; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, to publish; nuptias diem, to delay; diem Ilio, to defer the destruction of, Hor.

**REFERRE** alicui, to answer; se, gradum v. pedem, to retreat; gratiam alicui, to make a request; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, vel ex aliquo, et reportare, to gain; institutum to renew; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, to restore to the Equites the right of judging; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad

sapientes, ad populum, to lay before; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. to mark down; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, to acknowledge one's self indebted; pecunias acceptas & expensas; nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, to mark down accounts; alienos inopes ad suos, to judge of by; in v. inter serarios, to reduce to the lowest class; in numerum deorum, in vel inter deos, & respondere, to rank among; pugnas, res gestas, to relate; patrem ore, to resemble; amissos colores, to regain, Horat.

**TRANSFERRE** rationes in tabulas, to post one's books, to state accounts; in Latinam linguam, to translate; verba, to use metaphorically; culpam in eum & rejicere, to lay the blame on him.

## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbâton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

### 1. ELLIPSIS.

**ELLIPSIS** is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. homines: *Dic mihi, Damæta, cuium pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damæta, (eum hominem) cuium pecus*; (est hoc pecus.) *Aberant bidui, sc. iter vel itinere. Decies sestertiâ, sc. centena millia. Quid multa? sc. dicam. Antiquum obtines, sc. morem, v. institutum, Plaut. Hodie in ludum occipi ire literarium, ternas jam scio, sc. literas, i. e. AMO, Id. Triduo abs te nullas acceperam, sc. literas, i. e. epistolam, Cic. Brevis dicam, sc. sermone: So Complecti, respondere, &c. breve. Dii meliora, sc. faciant: Rhodum volo, inde Athenas, sc. ire, Id. Bellicum, v. classicum canere, sc. signum, Liv. Civica donatus, sc. coronâ; So obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c. Id. Epistola librarii manu est, sc. scripta, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "the elect," i. e. persons.*

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called **ASYNDĒTON**; as, *Deus optimus maximus, sc. et; Sartum tectum conservare, i. e. sartum et tectum*; So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit, Cic. Ferte citi flammæ, date vela, impellite remos, Virg. Velis nolis, sc. seu.*

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of **ENALLAGE**, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; **ANTIPTŌSIS**, i. e. the putting of one case for another; **HELLENISM** or **GRÆCISM**, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; **SYNĒSIS**, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.; thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi, is, Duo milia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerant homines) cæsi, Liv. So Servitia immemores, Liv. Monstrum quæ, scil. mulier, Hor. Scelus qui, sc. homo, Ter. Omnia Mercurio similis, scil. secundum, Virg. Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati (et) uterque (legatus missus) de magnis rebus, Horat. Servitia repudiabat, cujus, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum, Sall. Concursum populi, mirantium, Liv. Illum ut vivat optant, for ut ille vivat, Ter. Populum late regem, for regnantem, Virg. Expediti militum, for milites; Classis stabat Rhegii, for ad Rhegium, Liv. Latium Capuaque agro multati, sc. homines, Id. Utraque formosæ, sc. mulieres, Ovid. Aperite aliquis ostium, Ter. Sensit delapsus, for delapsus, sc. se esse, Virg.*

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

## 2. PLEONASM.

**PLEONASM** is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis, I see with my eyes; Sic ore locuta est; adest præsens: Nusquam gentium; vivere vitam; servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit? Fac me ut sciam, &c. Sui sibi gladio hunc jugulo, Ter. Sui sibi succo vivant, Plaut.*

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called **POLYSYNDETON**; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt. Virg.*

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called **HENDIADYS**; as, *Pateris libamus et auro, for aureis pateris, Virg.*

When several words are used to express one thing, it

called PERIPHRAIS ; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura* ; *Genus piscium*, for *pisces* ; *Flores rosarum*, for *rosæ*, Hor.

### 3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anastrôphe*, *Hystêron*, *protêron*, *Hypallage*, *Synchêsis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthêsis*.

1. ANASTRÔPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first ; as, *Italiam contra* ; *His accensa super* ; *Spenque metumque inter dubii* ; for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are* for *are facit*, Lucret.

2. HYSTÊRON PROTÊRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter ; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. HYPALLAGE is the exchanging of cases ; as, *Dare clasibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. SYNCHÊSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words ; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras* ; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion ; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos utque parentes*, sc. *oro vos per liberos*, &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts ; as, *Septem subjecta, trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem sors diarum cunque dabit, lucro Appone*, Horat.

6. PARENTHÊSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction ; as, *Tityre, dum redeo*, (*brevis est via*), *pasce capellas*, Virg.

## III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

*Artificial* or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or shew its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence:

a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity*, and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate* and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names:

1. A **BARBARISM** is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *croftus*, for *agellus*; *rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stavi*, for *steti*; *tibcen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLECISM** is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was wa'king*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIOTISM** is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLOGY** is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLOGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.



## V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*;) and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

## 1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*;) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it *can* only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an **ALLEGORY**. An Example of this we have in Horace, book 1. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An **ALLEGORY** is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also con-

sidered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many Proverbs (*Proverbia* v. *Adagia*;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far-fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrêsis* (*abusio*;) as, *a leaf of paper, of gold, &c. the empire flourished*; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregi ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Sytlepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galatæa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars; 1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author for his works; as, *Bonna labores*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for *grain*, or *bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*; *Venus*, for *love*; *Vulcanus*, for *fire*; thus, *Sine, Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a general is put for his army; *Cicero, Virgil, and Horace*, for their works; *Moses and the Prophets* for their books; a beautiful *Raphael, Titian, Guido, Rhén, Rembrant, Reubens, Vandyke, &c.* for their pictures. 2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *Pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra cura, &c.* 3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink*: *Secundam mensam servus dispartit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Europe*, for the *Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the *Supreme Being*; *Secernit Europeen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum*; *Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the *temple of Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalëgon*, for *domus Ucalegontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for his ship, Id. *Æp.* v. 272. 4. The sign for the thing signi-

fied; as, *The crown*, for royal authority; *palma* or *laurus*, for victory; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82. 5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *vires*, for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. *Fast.* i. 560. 6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*, *vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the heart is put for courage or affection, and the head for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart*; *a warm heart*; *a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead*, *lost*, or *absent*: So *Fuimus Troes*, & *ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more. *Virg. Æn.* ii. 325.

3. SYNECDOCHE (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ*, *Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabuli*, & *fluminis Xanthi*, Virg. *Nat uncta carina*, for *navis*; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, Horat. *Sat.* i. 1. 114; the door, or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, Virg. *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c. 2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis*, *miles*, *pedes*, *eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times. 3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, Virg. *Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominatio*;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise man*, for

*Solomon*; *Astu*, for *Athens*; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal*; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates non deerunt*, *Placce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetæ*, Martial, viii. 56. 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelōpis parens*, for *Tantalus*; *Anſti reus*, for *Socrates*; *Troiani belli scriptor*, for *Homer*; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodāni*, for *Gallus*; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Horat. &c. or by a patronymic noun; as, *Anchisiades*, for *Æneas*; *Tyndāris, -idis*, for *Helēna*, &c. or by an epithet; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, Virg. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatālis et incestus iudex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. **IRONY** is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e Cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a **SARCASM**; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*, Justin. *Italiam metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called **LITOTES**; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis* or *superba*; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrasis*; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called **EUPHEMISMUS**; as, *Vitā functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamare euos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactare* or *ferire*, for *occidere*; *Fecerunt id servi, Melonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The **PERIPHRAISIS**, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

## 2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same verb is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHORA*: as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* Cic. *Te ductus conjux, te solo in littore æcum, Te veniente die, te descendente cæcebat*, Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTRÔPHE*, or *conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitâ, vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit*, Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOCE*, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quid, &c. Rullus*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANALEPSIS*; as, *Vilimus victoriam tuam præclorum exitu terminatam; gladium vagitû vacuum in urbe non vidimus*, Cic. pro Marcellô.

The reverse of the former is called *ANADAPLOSIS*, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imò in senatum venit*, Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANÔDOS*, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quæque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer imprûbus ille? Imprûbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater*, Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitate cum ab inferis*, Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus*, &c. Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum*, Virg. *Bellâ, horrida bellâ*, Id. *Ibimus, ibimus*, Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX*, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmulos, comparavit*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called *POLYPTÔTON*; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, p'enæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas*, Cic. *Littora litoribus contraria, fluctibus undas impreces, arma armis*, Virg. To this is usually referred what is called *SYNONYMIA*, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Nem sciam, non potiar, non siquam*, Cic. *Premisso, receptis, sponte*, Id. And also *EXPOLITIO*, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called **ANTANACLASIS**; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid inest amari*, Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the **PARONOMASIA**, or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Circum bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore arator factus*, Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes*. Ter. This is also called a **PUN**.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called **HOMOIOPŌTŌN**, i. e. *similiter eadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called **HOMOIOTELEUTON**, i. e. *similiter destinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter*, Cic.

### 3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopœia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. **HYPERBOLE** is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphœmus* says, *Ipsæ arduus, atlaque pulsât sidera*. So *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt*, Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinôsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. **PROSOPOPEIA**, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catalina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*, Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*, Id.

3. **APOSTROPHE**, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojaque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres*, Virg.

4. **SIMILE**, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. **ANTITHESIS**, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac magnificentiâ magnus habebatur, integritate, vitæ Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia*, &c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōron*, i. e. *acute dictum*; as, *Amici absentes ad-sunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuere capi*, Virg.

6. **INTERROGATION**, (Græc. *Erotâsis*,) is a figure

whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem, &c.* Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me aquora possunt accipere,* Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus?* *minime,* Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION; (*Echphonēsis*;) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis!* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divæ domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotyphōsis*;) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre,* &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videte magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos,* Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence; as, *Hannibal peto pacem,* Liv. *Proh! Jupiter ibit hic!* Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui,* Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMĒSIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

*Faces in castra tulissæm,*

*Implessemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque*

*Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg,

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare,* Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called *Auxēsis*, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabāsis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one

subject to another; as, Horat. Od. li. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustenatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. **PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. **ANACONÔSIS**, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporêsis* or *Addubitatio*. **LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. pro Ligario. **APOSTOPÊSIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. **SENTENTIA**, (*gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adco in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur et alget; Misera est magni, custodia census; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration*, or *Explication*: 3. The *argumentative* part, which includes, *Confirmation* or *proof*, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either *intrinsic* or *extrinsic*; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

## THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called **PROSODY**.

Syllables with respect to their quality, are either *long* or *short*.



A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common*; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgō* and *lēgō* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgō*, *perlēgō*; *relēgō*, *-āre*; *relēgō*, *-āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mēus*, *altus*: so *nihil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate*, *bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fīērī*, *fīerem*; thus,

*Omnia jam fient, fīērī quæ posse negabam.* Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cūi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompēi* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7*.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alīus*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alius*; *alterus*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

*Sometimes it is short*: as, *Danāe*, *Idēa*, *Sophia*, *Symphonia*, *Simōis*, *Hýades*, *Phāon*, *Deucalion*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebāis*, &c.

*Often it is long*: as, *Lycāon*, *Machāon*, *Didymāon*; *Amphion*, *Arion*, *Ixion*, *Pan-*

dion; Nāis, Lāis, Achāia; Briēis, Cadmēis; Latōus, & Latōia, Myrtōus, Nerēius, Priamēius; Achēiōus, Mēiōus; Archēlāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Œnēas, Pe-nēus, Epēus, Acrisio-nēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantiēus; Darius, Basirius, Eugra-nus, Bacchus; Cassiopēa, Cēsarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Me-dēa, Panchēa, Penelopēa; Clio, Enyo, ELEGIA, Iphigenia, Alexandria, Thalia, Anti-ochia, Idolostrā, Istanla, polistā, &c. Lærtēs, Dēiphōbus, Dējanira, Trōēs, he-rēs, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chorea, platea, Malva, Nereides, canopum, Orion, Ger-yon, Eos, eūs &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphēa, Saimonēa, Capharēa, &c.* but sometimes long; as, *Idomēta, Ilionēa, Virg.* Instead of *Elegia, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēia, Cythērēa* Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science, idēa*.

**II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant is long (by position, as it is called;) as,**

*ārma, fāllo, āxis, gūza, mājor*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bi-jūgus, quadri-jūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

*Ferte citi flammās, date vultū, scandite muros.* Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

**I A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common;**

as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebra*, thus,

*Et primū similibs volūcri, mox vera volūcria.* Ovid.

*Nex tenēbras, profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras.* Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, phiragra, celebris, latebræ, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patria* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salubris, ambulacrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salūta*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *ars, abtus*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

*L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

**III. A contracted syllable is long; as,**

*Nil* for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*; *it*, for *ist*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bigæ*, for *bi-jūgæ*; *scilicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

**IV. A diphthong is always long; as,**

*Aurum, Cēsar, Eubœa, &c.* Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *frætre, fræustus*; thus,

*Nec totā tamen ille prior præunte carinā.* Virg.

*Stipitibus duris agitur eucibusque præustis.* Id.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

*— eum vacuus domino præiret Arion.* Statius.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## I. CONCERNING THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*Preterites and Supines of Two Syllables.*

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni. vidi, vici.*

Except *bibi, scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli, dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Visum, cāsum, mōtum.*

Except *sātum*, from *sēro*; *cītum*, from *cico*; *lītum*, from *lino*; *sītum* from *sino*; *stātum*, from *sisto*; *itum*, from *eo*; *dātum*, from *do*; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quītum*, from *queo*; *rātus*, from *reor*.

*Preterites which double the first syllable.*

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

*Cēcīdi, tētīgi, pēpūli, pēpēri, dīdīci, tūtūdi*: except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo*; *pēpēdi*, from *pædo*; and when two consonants intervene; as, *fēfelli, tētēdi, &c.*

## INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, régis*. Here *re* is called the *encrease* or *cement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a cement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, genēri, genērōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructūi; res, rei*; which fall under Rule I.

*Third Declension.*

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i, and u* short; as,

*Pietātis, honōris; muliēris, lapīdia, murmuris,*

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

## A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma*, -*ātis*; *poema*, -*ātis*.

## O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo*, -*inis*; *Virgo*, -*inis*; *Ando*, -*ēnis*; *Cicero*, -*ōnis*. Genitive or partial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macêdo*, -*ōnis*; *Saxo*, -*ōnis*. Some are long; as, *Succubitor*, -*is*; *Brittones* in common.

## I. C. D.

I shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromeli*, -*itis*. Ec lengthens -*ecis*; as, *Halec*, -*ēctis*.

A noun in D shortens the crement; as, *David*, -*itis*.

## L.

Masculines in AL shorten *itis*; as, *Sal*, -*itis*; *Hannibal*, -*itis*; *Hasdrubal*, -*itis*; but neuter lengthen it; as, *animal*, -*itis*.

*Silis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael*, -*itis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil*, -*itis*; *consul*, -*itis*.

## N.

Nouns in ON vary their crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, -*ōnis*; *Chirost*, -*ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Mephan*, -*ōnis*; *Actæon*, -*ōnis*.

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen*, -*inis*; *titicæ*, -*inis*. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ōnis*; as, *Titan*, -*ōnis*; EN *ēnis*; as, *Sten*, -*ēnis*; EN *itis*; as, *delphin*, -*itis*; YN *ōnis*; as, *Phorcyn*, -*ōnis*.

## R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, -*aris*. Except the following, *paccher*, -*aris*; *jubar*, -*aris*; *nectar*, -*aris*: Also the adjective *par*, *pāris*, and its compounds, *impar*, -*aris*; *dispar*, -*aris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive: *Nar nāris*, the name of a river; *fur fūris*; *ver vērīs*: Also *Rectimer*, -*ēris*; *Byzer*, -*ēris*; *Ser*, -*ēris*; *Iber*, -*ēris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater*, -*ēris*; *character*, -*ēris*. Except *ather*, -*ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor*, -*ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor*, -*ōris*; *aquor*, -*ōris*; Greek nouns in *or*; as, *Hector*, -*ōris*; *Actor*, -*ōris*; *rhetor*, -*ōris*: Also, *arbor*, -*ōris*, and *memor*, -*ōris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Cæsar*, -*āris*; *Hamilar*, -*āris*; *lar*, -*āris*. ER *eris* of any gender; as, *āer*, -*āris*; *mulier*, -*ēris*; *codiver*, -*ēris*; *iter*, anciently *itiner*, *itineris*; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vultur*, -*āris*; *murmur*, -*āris*. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr*, -*yris*.

## AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas*, -*ātis*; *Macēnas*, -*ātis*. Except *anas*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *itis*, *ātis*, and *ōnis*; thus, *Palas*, -*ātis*; *artecreas*, -*ātis*; *Melas*, -*ōnis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vādis*; *mas*, *mādis*: But *vas*, *vāsio*, is long.

## ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, -*itis*; *Ceres*, -*ēris*; *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locuples*, -*itis*; *quies*, -*itis*; *hæres*, -*itis*; *merces*, -*itis*.

## IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, -*idis*; *Sanguis*, -*inis*; *Phyllis*, -*idis*.

Except *Glis*, *glis*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *itis*; *dis*, *dis*; *Quis*, -*itis*; *Sannio*, -*itis*: But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.

The following also lengthen the crement; *Cremis*, -*itis*; *Psophis*, -*idis*; *Nosis*, -*itis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also in; as, *Salamis*, or in, *Salamitis*.

## OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos*, -*ōis*; *flor*, *flōis*.

Except *Bo*, *bōis*; *compes*, -*ōis*; and *impos*, -*ōis*.

## US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, -*ūs*; *tripus*, -*ūs*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūs*, and *ūtis*; as, *insus*, -*ūtis*; *jus*, *jūs*; *sabus*, -*ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūis*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, -*ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ūs*; as, *melius*, -*ūs*.

## YS.

YS shortens *ydis* or *ydes*; as, *chlamys*, *ydis*, or *ydes*; and lengthens *yis*; as, *Brachys*, -*yis*.

## BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *calceus*, -*ibis*; *inops*, -*ōpis*; *hæmus*, *hæmīs*.

Except *Cyclops*, -*ōpis*; *sepe*, *sēpis*; *grupe*, *grūphis*; *Cercops*, -*ōpis*; *picus*, *picūis*; *hydrops*, -*ōpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -*itis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, -*igis*; *remex*, -*igis*; *Allobrox*, -*igis*; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, *legis*, and *ex*, *régis*, are long; and likewise *frugis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, -*icis*: except *videx*, -*icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, -*icis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, -*icis*, &c.

Except *fūcis*, *necis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calicis*, *colicis*, *plēis*, *formicis*, *ovis*, *Cappadōcis*, *alēis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onychiis*, *Erycis*, *mastyx*, -*ychis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastrich-tree*, and many others whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, -*icis*, or -*icis*; *Sandys*, -*icis*, or -*icis*; *Bebryx*, -*ychis*, or -*ychis*.

### Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O* long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

*musarum*, *rerum*, *dominorum*; *rēgibus*, *portibus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

### INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *mā* is the increase or crement; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third* increase.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u*, short; as,

*Amāre*, *docēre*, *amātōle*; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *polūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēdērunt* and *stēdērunt*; and lengthen *rīmus* and *stīcis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as—*transieritis aquas*, *Ovid*. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

### REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelides*, *Tydidēs*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult as, *Achāis*, *Ptolemāis*, *Chrysēis*, *Ænēis*, *Memphītis*, *Latōis*, *Icarīōtis*, *Nerine*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebāis*, and *Phocēis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academicus*, *leptidus*, *legitimus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *puḍicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus* of *per* and *fides*, is short) *bimus*, *quadrimus*, *patrīmus*, *matrīmus*, *opāmus*; and two superlatives, *imus*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS*, shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, *herilis*, &c. To these add *exilis*, *subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quinctilis*, *Sextilis*: Except *humilis*, *parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis*, are short; as, *versātilis*, *volatilis*, *umbra-tilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracinus*, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *faginus*, *oleaginus*; *adamantinus*, *cristallinus*, *crastinus*, *pristinus*, *perendinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agninus*, *austri-nus*, *binus*, *clandestinus*, *Latinus*, *marinus*, *supinus*, *vespertinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM*; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus*, *filuola*, *musæolem*; *lectulus*, *ratiuncula*, *corculum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim*, *tiritim*, *tribulim*. Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second or third person is the penult; as, *esurio*, *esuris*, *esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio*, *liguris*; *scaturio*, *scaturis*, &c.

#### PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

*The following proper names lengthen the penult.* Abdēra, Abūdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alaricus, Alcides, Amycle, Andronicus, Anūbis, Archimēdis, Ariarthes, Ariobarzanes, Aristides, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabanus; Brachmanes, Busiris, Buthrotus; Cethægus, Chalcedon, Cleobulus, Cyrene, Cythæra, Curætes; Darci, Demonteus, Diamēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphyle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrates, Eumēdes, Euripus, Euxinus; Garganus, Gætūlus, Granicus; Heliogabalus, Hemleus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippōnax, Hispanus; Irēne; Laedyas, Latōna, Leucata, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandane, Mausōlus, Maximinus, Melæger, Messala, Messana, Milētus; Naxos, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachynus, Pandōra, Pelōris, &-us, Pharsālus, Phœnice, Pōlites, Polycētus, Polynices, Priapus; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonice, Suffetes; Tigrānes, Themalonice; Verōna, Veroulca.

*The following are short:* Amāthas, Amphipolis, Anaborsis, Anticyra, Antigonus, &-ne, Antiochus, Antiochus, Antiope, Antipas, Antipater, Antiphanes, Antipha-

tes, Antiphilla, Antiphon, Anſtus, Apſus, Areopagus, Arimſnum, Armēnus, Athēns, Attalus, Attica; Bīdrix, Bructeri; Caſſiber, Callierates, Callistratus, Candace, Cantaber, Carneades, Cereſus, Chryſoſtomus, Cleombrotus, Cleomenes, Corſus, Conſtantinopolis, Crates, Cratylus, Cremora, Crustumeri, Cybele, Cyclus, Cyzius; Dalmatae, Damocles, Dardanus, Deſoces, Deſotarus, Democritus, Demipho, Didymus, Diogenes, Drepanum, Dumiſrix; Empedocles, Ephesus, Evergetes, Eumenes, Eurymedon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryones, Gyarus; Hecyra, Heliopolis, Hermione, Herodotus, Hesiodus, Hesione, Hippocrates, Hippocratus, Hypata, Hypatis; Ictus, Ictas, Ilſris, Iphitus, Ismarus, Ithaca; Laodice, Laomedon, Lampsacus, Lamyrus, Lapithae, Leucetlis, Libanus, Lipare, v. a, Lyſimachus, Longimanus; Marathon, Manalus, Marmarica, Maſſagetae, Matrona, Megara, Melitus, & a, Metropolis, Mutina, Myconus, Neceles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphale; Patara, Pegusus, Pharnaces, Pisistratus, Polydamas, Polixena, Porſena, or Porſenna, Praxiteles, Puteoli, Pylades, Pythagoras; Sarmatae, Sarvina, Semela, Semiramis, Sequania, & a, Seriphos, Sicoria, Socrates, Solima, Solades, Spartacus, Sporades, Strongyle, Stymphalus, Sybaris; Targotus, Telegonus, Telemachus, Tenedos, Tarraco, Theophaues, Theophilus, Tomyrus; Urbicus; Veneti, Vologesus, Volſus; Xenocrates; Zoilus, Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batavi*, Lucan, *Batavi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *praetolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

### A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musa*, *templā*, *Tydeā*, *lampadā*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā*, *Aeneā*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Aeneā*, *O Pallā*.

*A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *praetereā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Itā*, *quā*, *ejā*, *postea*, *putā*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contra*, *ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintā*, &c. *Contra*, and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

### E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

*Natē*, *sedilē*, *patrē*, *curre*, *nempē*, *antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions *quē*, *vē*, *nē*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptē*, *cē*, *tē*; as, *suapte*, *hujuscē*, *tutē*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliopē*, *Anchisē*, *fidē*. So *rē*, and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē*, *hodie*, *pridie*, *postridie*, *quotidie*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Dorē*, *manē*; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē*: to these add *fermē, ferē, and ohē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē*: but *benē* and *malē* are short.

## I.

XIII. *I* final is long; as, *Dōmini, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common; as, *Palladī, Minorīdī*.

*Mīhī, tībī, sībī*, are also common: so likewise are *ibī, nisi, ubī, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubī* and *necubī* are always short.

## O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long; as, *librō, dominō*: also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Athō*, the genit. of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise, *illō, idcirco, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illucō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

## U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū: Molŷ*.

## B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

*Ab, apūd, semēl, precōr, capūt*.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl*; *pār*, and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.*; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr*,



*vēr*, *Ibēr* ; likewise *aēr*, *æthēr* ; to which add Hebrew names ; as, *Jōb*, *Daniēl*, *David*.

*M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short ; as, *Militūm octo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel ; thus, *Milk' octo* ; except in compound words ; as, *circūmāgo*, *circūmeo*.

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N* in the end of a word, are long ; as, -

*Ac*, *sic*, *nōn*. So Greek nouns in *n* ; as, *Tītān*, *Sirēn*, *Salamin* ; *Æneān*, *Anchisēn*, *Circēn* ; *Lacedæmōn*, &c.

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc* ; *forsitān*, *in*, *forsān*, *tamēn*, *ān*, *vidēn* ; likewise nouns in *en* which have *inis* in the genitive ; as, *carmēn*, *crimēn* ; together with several Greek nouns ; as, *Iliōn*, *Pylōn*, *Alexin*.

The pronoun *hic*, and the verb *fac*, are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS*, *ES*, and *OS*, in the end of a word, are long ; as, *Mās*, *quīs*, *bonūs*.

The following words are short, *anās*, *ēs*, from *sum* and *penēs* ; *ōs*, having *osis* in the genitive, *compūs*, and *impūs* ; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations ; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās*, *herōūs*, *Phrygēs*, *Arcadōs*, *Tenēdōs*, *Melōs*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult. of the genitive increasing short ; as, *Alēs*, *hebēs*, *obsēs*. But *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS*, *US*, and *YS*, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

*Turrīs*, *legīs*, *legimūs*, *annūs*, *Capys*.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long ; as, *Pennīs*, *librīs*, *nobīs*, *omnēs*, for *omnes*, *fructūs*, *manūs* : also the genitive singular of the fourth declension ; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plural is short ; as, *floribūs*, *fructibūs*, *rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis* ; as, *lis*, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*, *Simoīs*. To these add the adverbs *grātis* and *foris* ; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb ; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis* ; as, *audis*, *abīs*, *possēs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long ; as, *grūs*, *sūs* : also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *ūtis*, *untis*, or *ūdis* ; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *amāthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add

the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Clíus, Sapphús, Mantús*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthús*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys, Trachys*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

## THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

### 1. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

<i>Amicus, from</i>	<i>ama.</i>	<i>Decoro, from</i>	<i>decus, -oris.</i>
<i>Auctionor,</i>	<i>auctio, -oris.</i>	<i>Exulo,</i>	<i>exul, -ilis.</i>
<i>Auctore,</i>	<i>auctor, -oris.</i>	<i>Pavidus,</i>	<i>páveo.</i>
<i>Auditor,</i>	<i>audire.</i>	<i>Quirito,</i>	<i>quiris, -itis.</i>
<i>Auspiceor,</i>	<i>auspex, -icis.</i>	<i>Radiceus,</i>	<i>radix, -icis.</i>
<i>Cauponor,</i>	<i>caupo, -onis.</i>	<i>Sospito,</i>	<i>Sospes, -itis.</i>
<i>Compétitor,</i>	<i>compétitum.</i>	<i>Natura,</i>	<i>nátus.</i>
<i>Corniox,</i>	<i>cornix, -icis.</i>	<i>Maternus,</i>	<i>máter.</i>
<i>Custodio,</i>	<i>custos, -odis.</i>	<i>Légebam, &amp;c.</i>	<i>lêgo.</i>
<i>Decorus,</i>	<i>decor, -oris.</i>	<i>Légeram, &amp;c.</i>	<i>lêgi.</i>

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from Short.			
<i>Dēni, from dēcem.</i>	<i>Suspicio, from suspiceor.</i>	<i>Móbilis from</i>	<i>móveo.</i>
<i>Fóma, fóveo.</i>	<i>Sedes, séden.</i>	<i>Húmor,</i>	<i>húmus.</i>
<i>Húmanus, húmo.</i>	<i>Séculus, sécus.</i>	<i>Jumentum,</i>	<i>júvo.</i>
<i>Régula, régo.</i>	<i>Pénuria, pénus.</i>	<i>Vox, vócia,</i>	<i>vóco, &amp;c.</i>
2. Short from Long.			
<i>Árena and Árista, fram</i>	<i>Áreo,</i>	<i>Lúcerna, fram</i>	<i>lúceo.</i>
<i>Nóta and nóto,</i>	<i>nótus.</i>	<i>Dux, dúcia,</i>	<i>dúco.</i>
<i>Váduo,</i>	<i>vádo.</i>	<i>Stábilis,</i>	<i>stáham.</i>
<i>Fídes,</i>	<i>fído.</i>	<i>Dítio,</i>	<i>dis, dítis.</i>
<i>Sópor,</i>	<i>sópio.</i>	<i>Quásillus,</i>	<i>quáilus, &amp;c.</i>

### 2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*Dēdúco*, of *dē* and *dúco*. So, *prōféro*, *antéféro*, *consolor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpeculor*, *depáveo*, *despéro*, *despúmo*, *desquámo*, *enōdo*, *trúuio*, *exúdo*, *exáro*, *expáveo*, *incéro*, *inhúmo*, *investigo*, *prægrávo*, *prænáro*, *régelo*, *appáro*, *appáreo*, *concávus*, *prægrávis*, *dēsélo*, *suffóco* & *suffoco*, *diffidit* from *diffindo*, and *diffidit* from *diffido*, *indico* and *indico*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effodit*, in the present, and *effodit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperimus* and *reperimus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incido* from *in* and *cado*; *incido*, from *in* and *cado*; *suffoco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *admitto*, *përcello*, *dëosculor*, *pröhíbeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējero*, *pējero*, *innüba*, *pronüba*, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, *nihilum*, *semisöpitus*; from *nötus*, *jüro*, *nübo*, *dico*, *hilum*, and *söpío*: *ambitus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *pröfundus*, *pröfugio*, *pröfugus*, *prönëpos*, *pröneptis*, *pröfestus*, *pröfari*, *pröfiteor*, *pröfanus*, *pröfecto*, *pröcella*, *prötervus*, and *pröpägo*, a lineage; *pro* in *pröpägo*, a vine stock, or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propago*, to propagate; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procüro*, and *Proserpina*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sëpáro*, *divello*: except *dírímo*, *disertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rëmitto*, *rëfëro*: except in the impersonal verb *rëfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trëcenti*, *nëfas*, *nëque*, *patëfacio*, &c. *Capricornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricöla*, *significo*, *bitformis*, *aliger*, *Trivia*, *tubicen*, &c. *duödëcim*, *hödie*, *sacrösanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quädam*, *quïvis*, *tantidem*, *eïdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrifacio*, *siquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter, short; also, *ubique*, *ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicumque*, the *i* is doubtful.

## ACCENT.

*Accent* is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced:

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphäsís*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [<sup>ˈ</sup>]; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [<sub>ˋ</sub>]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

The *circumflex* accent first raises and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [<sup>ˆ</sup>]; as, *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs *aliquò*, *continuo*, *doctè*, *undè*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poëtà*, *glorià* in the ablative: *fructùs*, *tumulùs* in the genitive: *nostràm*, *vestràm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergà*, on account of; *occidit*, he slew; *Pompill*, for *Pompili*; *amàrit*, for *amaretis*, &c.

## VERSE.

A Verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always turn back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

### FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

#### 1. Feet of two syllables.

*Spondëus*, consists of two long; as, *omnës*.

*Pyrhichius*, two short; as, *dëus*.

*Iambus*, a short and a long; as, *amäns*.

*Trochæus*, a long and a short; as, *ströus*.

#### 2. Feet of three syllables.

*Dactylus*, a long and two short; as, *scribëre*.

*Anapæstus*, two short and a long; as, *plëüs*.

*Amphimæcer*, a long, a short, and a long; as, *chærtüs*.

*Tribrächys*, three short; as, *döminüs*.

The following are not so much used:

*Molossus*,  
*Amphibrachys*,  
*Bacchius*,  
*Antibacchius*,

*dëlectant*,  
*hönrë*,  
*dëörë*,  
*pëläntür*.

*Antispartus*,  
*Ionicus major*,  
*Ionicus minor*,  
*Pæon primus*,  
*Pæon secundus*,  
*Pæon tertius*,  
*Pæon quartus*,  
*Epitritus primus*,  
*Epitritus secundus*,  
*Epitritus tertius*,  
*Epitritus quartus*,

*Alexander*,  
*cäcärübüs*,  
*pröptërbänt*,  
*tëmpëribüs*,  
*pöcëntüs*,  
*äimütüs*,  
*cërrëtüs*,  
*völüpëntës*,  
*pærivëntës*,  
*discördiäs*,  
*förtünäntës*.

#### 3. Feet of four syllables.

*Proceleusmaticus*,  
*Dispondeus*,  
*Dijambus*,  
*Choriambus*,  
*Ditrochæus*,

*höminübüs*,  
*trätörë*,  
*ämcenitäs*,  
*pöntiflötë*,  
*Cäntilënä*,

## SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectic*, or *Acatalectic*; an *Acatalectic* verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Deposito*, or *Clausula*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

## 1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Ludere | quæ vël | lêm cälä | mû pēr | mîstë ä | grëstî. *Virg.*  
Infân | düm Rê | gînä, jû | bës rënö | vâre dö | lörëm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter-line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*: as,

Cärä Dê | üm söbô | lës mä | gñüm Jövis | încrê | mëntüm. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it: so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omniä | Mërcürî | ô älmî | Its vö | cëmquë cö | lörëmque  
Et flavos crines — *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*  
Pinguis et ingratis præmeretur casus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*  
Illi inter æquæ magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*  
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.  
Accipiunt inimicum, imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse, is the **CÆSURA**.

*Cæsura* is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rê-gînä grä-vî jâm-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Trieminëris*: when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Pentheminëris*: when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Heptheminëris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennëminëris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Mê hë-cas nîvë-cas mûl-lî fûl-tû hÿ-cîn-thö. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* : as,

*Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pæce capellas. Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as, the last syllable of *fulvus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

*Römæ moenib' cœrrent impiger Hannib' armis. Seneca.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully ; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it ; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

## 2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees ; the third always a spondee ; and the fourth and fifth an anapaestus ; as,

*Nātū | rē sēquē | tūr sē- | minā quē- | quē sūc. Propert.*  
*Cārminē | hūc vī- | vēstē- | pūc in om- | nē mēis. Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves ; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a *cæsura* ; the latter, always of two dactyles and another *cæsura* ; thus,

*Nātū | rē sēquē | tūr | sēminā | quēquē sū- | æ.*  
*Cārminē | hūc vī- | vēsē | tēpūc in | omnē mē- | is.*

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

## 3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadean verse consists of four feet ; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius ; as,

*Mæcē- | nās lāvīs | cūlēs rē- | gībūs. Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus ; in the first place, a spondee ; in the second, a dactyle ; then a *cæsura* ; and after that two dactyles ; thus,

*Mæcē- | nās atē- | vīs | editē | regībūs.*

## 4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius ; as,

*Nāvis | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. Horat.*

Or, it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles ; thus,

*Nāvis | quæ tibi | creditūm.*

## 5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet ; viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees ; thus,

*Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | risquē | pūrūs. Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee ; as,

*Jūpitē | ūrgēt. Horat.*

## 6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquorā | vēntīs. *Horat.*

## 7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nēc.mētū- | ās dī- | em, nēc | optēs. *Martial.*

## 8. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The Greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | sē | nēcīā | sōrdidæ. *Horat.*

## 9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsura; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aut | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

## 10. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet; namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbitrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ. *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured such as the dactylic, trochiac anapaestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

## 11. IAMBIC.

Of iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, i. e. admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

*Dimeter*, Inār- | sīt æ- | stūō- | sūs. *Horat.*

*Trimeter*, Sūs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī | rtūs | rūt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapaustus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, i. e. in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

*Dimeter*, Cānīdī | ā trā- | ctāvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dēmūm. *Id.*

*Trimeter*, Quōquō | scēlō- | tī rūt- | tīs aut | eūt dēx | tēris. *Id.*

Pāvīdūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aut ād | vēnām | lāgēs | grēm. *Id.*

Alit- | būs āt- | quē cētī | būs hōmī- | cid' Hē-ctōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

## FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse are

called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Systôle*, and *Diastôle*.

1. *SYNALÆPHA* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

*Contievere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

*Contiēū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs in- | tēnti | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.*

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ē*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *ruk*, *hei*; as,

*O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

*Insule Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.*  
*Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. Id.*  
*Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.*  
*Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.*  
*Glauco et Panopææ, et Inoo Melicertæ.*

2. *ECTHLIPSIS* is when *ui* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

*O curas hominum! O quantan, est in rebus inane! Pers.*

thus,

*O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' est in | rēbūs in- | ānē.*

Sometimes the *Synalæpha*, and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of a verse; as,

*Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cælumque*  
*Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. Virg.*  
*Janque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latiorum*  
*Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. *SYNÆRESIS* is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthôn*, for *Phaethôn*. So, *ēi* in *Thesēi*, *Urythēi*, &c.; *deinde*, *Pompei*; *ūi*, in *hūc*, cut; *vi*, in *proinde*; *ēā*, in *aureā*; thus,

*Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesēi. Ovid.*  
*Proinde tota eloquio, solitum tūc. Virg.*  
*Filius huic contrā, torquet qui sidera mundi. Id.*  
*Auræa percussus virgā, verumque venenis. Id.*

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *furviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c.; as,

*Unā eddemque vid sanguisque animusque ferentur. Virg.*  
*Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. Id.*  
*Villis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. Hor.*  
*Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. Virg.*  
*Vehemens et liquidus puroque similimus axini. Hor.*  
*Te semper ante it dira necessitas. Alcip. Hor.*  
*Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. Virg.*  
*Cum refuit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. Id.*  
*Inde ubi venēre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. Id.*  
*His patriæ ceciderunt manus: quia protinus omnia. Id.*  
*Cedit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. Id.*  
*Semihominis Cæci facies quam dira tenebat. Id.*  
*Fluviorum rex Ericlanus, camposque per omnes. Id.*  
*Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. Id.*  
*Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva*, *tenuis*; *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*; *parjetbas*, *Nasidjenus*; for *nva*, *tenuis*, &c.; as,



Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenuis. *Lucr.*  
 Geniva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*  
 Aſſetut in portas & duros obſiſce poſtra. *Id.*  
 Velleraquæ ut foliis depectant tenuia Seres. *Id.*  
  dificant, ſect que intextunt abiete coſtas. *Id.*  
 Præcipuè ſanus, niſi cum pituita moleſta eſt. *Hor.*  
 Parſetibusque premunt artetis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*  
 Ut Naſidjenti juvit te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. DIERESIS divides one ſyllable into two ; as, *aul i*, for *aulæ* ; *Tr ice*, for *Trejæ* ; *Pers us*, for *Perseus* ; *mil ius*, for *milvus* ; *ſol uit*, for *ſolvit* ; *vol uit*, for *roluit* ; *aqu e*, *s etus*, *ſil sit*, *ſu vos*, *rel ng it*, *rel qu as*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c. ; as,

*Aul i in medio libabant pocula Bacchi.* *Virg.*  
*Stamina non ulli diſſolvienda Deo.* *Pentam. Tibullus.*  
*Debuerant fuſos evol iſſe ſuos.* *Id. Ovid.*  
*Quæ calidum faciunt aqu e tactum atque vaporem.* *Lucr.*  
*Cum mihi non tantum furesque ferreque ſu et .* *Horat.*  
*Atque alios aſſi inridant, Veneremque ſu dent.* *Lucr.*  
*Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone S evos.* *Lucan.*  
*Impoſito fratri moribunda rel ng it ore.* *Ovid.*  
*Rel qu as tamen eſſe vias in mente patenteis.* *Lucr.*

5. SYST LE is when a long ſyllable is made ſhort ; as the penult in *tulerunt* ; thus,

*M tri longa d cem tul runt, ſt dia menses.* *Virg.*

6. DIAST LE is when a ſyllable uſually ſhort is made long ; as the laſt ſyllable in *amor*, in the following verſe ;

*Conſidant, ſi tantus am r, et m enſa condant.* *Virg.*

To theſe may be ſubjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly uſed by the poets, though ſome of them likewise frequently occur in proſe.

1. When a letter or ſyllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROTH SIS ; as, *gn vus* for *navus* ; *t t li* for *tuli*. When a letter or ſyllable is interpoſed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTH SIS ; as, *relligio*, for *religio* ; * nduperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or ſyllable is added to the end, it is called PARAG GE ; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or ſyllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHER SIS ; as, *natus* for *gnatus* ; *t nderant* for *t tenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNC PE ; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti* ; *d  m*, for *deorum*. If from the end, APOC PE ; as, *viden'*, for *videsne* ; *Anton *, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or ſyllable is tranſpoſed, it is called METATH SIS ; as, *piſtris*, for *pristis* ; *Lybia*, for *L b a*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITH SIS ; as, *fac unum*, for *faciendum* ; *olli*, for *illi* ; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

##   DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work compoſed in verſe is called a *Poem*, (*Po a*, or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their ſubject, their form, the manner of treating the ſubject, and their ſtyle.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM ; on a mournful ſubject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION : in praiſe of the Supreme Being, a HYMN ; in praiſe of any perſon or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM ; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE ; a poem to be inſcribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A ſhort poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE. whence ſuch compoſitions are called *Lyric Poems* : a poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE ; a ſhort witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which ariſe from any ſubject, is called an EPIGRAM ; as theſe of Catullus and Martial. A ſharp unexpected lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expreſſing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obſcure queſtion to be explained, is called an  NIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is deſcribed ſo that the firſt letters of each verſe, and ſometimes the middle and final letters expreſs the name of the perſon or thing deſcribed, it is called an ACROSTIC ; as the following on our Saviour :

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cœli I,  
 E xpellit tenebras E toto Phœbus ut orb E;  
 S ic cœcus remouet JESVS caliginis umbra S,  
 V isificansque simul V ero præco dia met V  
 S olem justitiæ, S cœ probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, *Historical*, *Didactic*, or *Instructive*, (as the *Satire* or *Epistle*) and *Descriptive*.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are *COMEDY*, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and *TRAGEDY*, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or *BUCOLICS*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the *EPIC* or *HEROIC* poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

## COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long Poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his *Satires* and *Epistles*. Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*. Lucan, Silius, Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use *Hexameter* verse; Plautus, Terence, and other writers of *Comedy*, generally use the *Iambic*, and sometimes the *Trochaic*. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called *Lyric* poems, as the odes of Horace and the *Psalms* of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *MONOCOLON*, sc. *poema*, v. *carmen*; or *MONOCŒLOS*, sc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, *DICOLON*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *TRICOLON*.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called *DICOLON DISTROPHON*; as when a single *Pentameter* is alternately placed after an *HEXAMETER*, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegia solve capillos;  
 Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *DICOLON TRISTROPHON*: when after four lines *Dicolon TETRASTROPHON*: as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem  
 Diligit, tum caret phœlesti  
 Sordibus tecti: caret invidenda  
 Sobrius aula. Horat.

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *TRICOLON TRISTROPHON*: but if it returns after four lines, it is called *TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON*: as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or *Horatian verse*, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori  
 Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;  
 Cœtusque vulgares, et adam  
 Spernit humum fugiente penna.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE IN HORACE AND BUCHANAN.

### I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See No 3. p. 270. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Ps. 28, 40, 30.
2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus : Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.
3. *Iambic trimeter*, No 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.
4. *Hexameter*, No 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.
5. *Iambic Dimeter*, No 12.—Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 88, 98, 98, 117, 143, 149, 150.
6. *The Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.
7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.
8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.
9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

### II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, No 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.
2. Every first line, (*Dactylic-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondee, an iambus, a cæsure, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.
3. The first line *Hexameter* ; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7. 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4, 111.
4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer : every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.
5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees, and a cæsure ; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, No 9. Hor. II. 18.
6. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsure, Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Ps. 12.
7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter* ; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.
8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter* ; the second (*Sapphic*), consists of two dactyls, a cæsure, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts ; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, No 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, No 11. Hor. Epod. 11.
9. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81.
10. *Hexameter* and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Ps. 2, 20, 21, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line *Sapphic*, No 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No 11. Buch Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Ps. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochaic*;) three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*. No 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth *Adonian*, No 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11, *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 80, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 12. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, No 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus, in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, No 6. Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, No 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, No 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, No 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The two lines, the *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No 8. The third, *Archilachian Iambic*, No 9. The fourth, the *Lesser Alcaic*, No 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145.

## ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three, in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *āiōst, crēāte*: or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; *hō'y, lōst'y*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

# I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

## 1. Of four syllables, or of two feet; as,

With ravish'd ears,  
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

## 2. Of six syllables, or of three feet; as,

Aloft in awful state,  
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

## 3. Of eight syllables, or of four feet; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,  
No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Horace.*

## 4. Of ten syllables, or of five feet, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,  
And still I seem to tread on Classic ground;  
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,  
That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse: thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,  
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth: but Dryden taught to join  
The varying verse, the full resounding line,  
The long majestic march, and energy divine. *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;  
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast,  
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. *Dryden.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to pow'r divine restor'd,  
His thunder taught the world to know its lord,  
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

And many an humorous, many an amorous lay,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12.

Was sung by many a bard, on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself; the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *e'er* for *over*; *e'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

## II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

## 1. Of three syllables ; as,

Dreadful gleams,  
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

## 2. Of five syllables ; as,

In the days of old,  
Stories plainly told,  
Lovers felt annoy.

## 3. Of seven syllables ; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,  
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, i. e. a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet ; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables ; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,  
Till the roofs all around,  
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,  
How the nightingales warble their loves ! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions, with absolute sway,  
And grow wiser and better as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The sword or the dart  
Shall pierce my and heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,  
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,  
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works, the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular* or *Pindaric odes*.—Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together ; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,  
My rising soul surveys,  
Transported with the view, I'm lost  
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another ; as,

Keep silence, all created things,  
And wait your Maker's nod :  
The muse stands trembling, while she sings  
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse ; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

*In Blank verse.*

'Tis heaven itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

*In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.*

The piece, you think, is incorrect ? Why, take it ;  
I'm all submission ; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded.  
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,  
With hollow blasts of wind,  
A damsel lay deplo'ring,  
All on a rock reclin'd. *Gay.*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,  
Prais'd the sly musician's art ;  
Love, his light disguise rejecting,  
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,  
Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother,  
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*

Now with furies surrounded,  
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote me for my prince and country ;  
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,  
Darkness inclin'd and the winds whistled round me. *Ortway.*

## APPENDIX I.

### Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Months.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.),

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourses. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* ( ). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (\*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (""); *Crotchets* [ ]; *Brace* ( { ); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (∧); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintinus*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem Plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicus Doctor*; L. L. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.



Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital ; as, *Et cætera* ; Ap. *Appius* ; Cn. *Cneius* ; Op. *Opiter* ; Sp. *Spurius* ; Ti. *Tiberius* ; Sex. *Sextus* ; Cos. *Consul* ; Coss. *Consules* ; Imp. *Imperator* ; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire* ; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor* ; Acct. *Account* ; MS. *Manuscript* ; MSS. *Manuscripts* ; Do. *Ditto* ; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word ; as, i. e. *id est* ; h. e. *hoc est* ; e. g. *exempli gratiâ* ; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The Letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I denotes *one*. V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two* ; III. *three* ; XX. *twenty* ; XXX. *thirty* ; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater ; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater ; thus,

IV. Four.

V. Five.

VI. Six.

IX. Nine.

X. Ten.

XI. Eleven.

XL. Forty.

L. Fifty.

LX. Sixty

XC. Ninety.

C. A hundred.

CX. A hundred and ten.

A thousand is marked thus, or  $\overline{\text{M}}$  which in later times was contracted into M. Five hundred is marked thus,  $\overline{\text{D}}$  or by contraction, D.

The annexing of D to C. makes its value ten times greater ; thus,  $\overline{\text{CD}}$  marks *five thousand* ; and  $\overline{\text{L}}$  *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of D to the number of C, makes its value ten times greater ; thus,  $\overline{\text{CCD}}$  denotes *ten thousand* ; and  $\overline{\text{CCCD}}$  *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number they did it by repetition ; thus,  $\overline{\text{CCCD}}$ ,  $\overline{\text{CCCD}}$ , signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find thousands expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{M}}$  denotes *three thousand* ;  $\overline{\text{X}}$  *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or figures, which from the ten fingers of the hands were called *Digits* ; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nothing, nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left ; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times ; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand. 2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together ; CIO, DCCCXCVIII, or M, DCCCXCVIII. 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

*Division of the Roman Months.*

The Romans divided their months in three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the *ides*, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *ides*, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the *nones*, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: the day before the *nones*, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

●

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER trices;   
 Unum plus reliqui: FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;   
 At si bisextus fuerit, superadditur unus.   
 Tu primam mensis lucem die esse kalendas,   
 Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,   
 Quatuor at reliqui: dabit idus quilibet octo.   
 Omnes post idus lucem die esse kalendas,   
 Nomen sortiri debant a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. Kal. *Martii* or *Martias*. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

## APPENDIX II.

Containing Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.

### I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

*Names of Trees.* See page 10.

1. Arbor femineis dabitur : sed mas *oleaster*,  
Et *rhamnus* : petit hic *potius*, *cytisusque* *rebusque* :  
Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* *volet*, atque *cupressus* ;  
Hoc quod in *um*, *uberque*, *iller* dant, *rober* *acerque*.

*Nouns in A of the first declension.* p. 11. and 11.

2. Hæc dat A quod primæ est : sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit.  
*Hadria* mas æquor, pariterque *cometa*, *planeta* :  
Mascula & interdum *talpa*, *damamque* *videbis*.

*Nouns in US and OS.* p. 20. 28. and 35.

4. Hæc *domus* & *vannus*, pro fructu *ficus* & *alvus* ;  
Sic *humus* atque *manus* poscunt : *acus* addito *quartæ*,  
*Porticus* atque *tribus*. Caput hoc *virus* *pelagusque*.  
Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini  
Sæpe solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :  
Femineum sed multa petunt : ut *abyssus*, *eremus*,  
*Antidotusque*, *pharus*, *dialectus*, *carbassus* : adde  
Ex *odos* & *phithongos* genitum, quæque à generali  
Voce genus plantæ & gemmæ capiunt muliebri.  
Hic aut hæc donat *balanus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,  
*Barbitus*, atque *penus*, *grossus* : sed *grus*, *atomusque*  
Femineum potius cupiunt ; *colus*. adde, virile  
Quod raro invenies : muliebri at contra *camelus*  
Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgas*,  
Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* & *penus* addito neutris.

*Nouns of the third declension in O.* p. 23.

7. Hic Dat O : femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur & *echo* ;  
Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,  
Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.  
Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula *cudo*,  
*Harpago* sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*. *ligo*que.  
Rarius hæc *margo*, vati est, hic sæpe *cupido*,  
*Arrhabo* cum *cardo*, muliebria vix imitanda.

*C and L.* p. 24. rule 3.

9. Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :  
*Mascula* *sol*, *mugil*, seu *sal*, quod rarius hoc vult.

*N.* p. 24. rule 4.

10. Masculinum capit N. Finita in *men* dato neutris,  
Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *unguen*.  
Addideris *pollen*. *Sinulon* petit hæc & *ædon* ;  
*Alcyonem* junges, data postea *queis* comes *icon*.

*AR and UR.* p. 25. rule 5.

11. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculinum *salar* optat.  
Hoc dat UR. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture* *turtur*.

ER and OR p. 25. rule 6.

13. ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :  
At *tuber* hic fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem  
Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere spinther*,  
*Verque cadaver, iter*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *linter*.  
Hic dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : *cor*, *adorque* hoc, *marmor* & *æquor*.

IS. p. 26. rule 7.

15. AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *ros*, *vasis*, queisque Pe'asgi  
Dant *atis* in patrio : quibus *antis* masculino sunt.

ES. p. 26. rule 3.

16. Hæc dabit ES. Capiant *ales* hic hæcve, *palmæ*,  
Atque *dies* : sed mas proles : mas *poples* & *ames*,  
*Fomes*, *pes*, *paries*, *palmes*, cum *limite stipes*,  
Queis addes *trames*, *termes*, cum *gurgile cespes* ;  
Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio ; sed neutra capessunt  
*Hippomanes*, *panaces*, *nepenthes*, sic *cacoethes*.

IS. p. 27. rule 9.

17. IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piactis* & *axis*,  
*Glis*, *callis*, *vermis*, *vectis*, *mensis*, *cucumisque*.  
*Mugilis* & *postis* cum *sanguine fascis* & *orbis*,  
*Fustis* item *collis*, *caulisque*, & *foliis* & *ensis*,  
Serpentemque notans *cenchris*, cum *vomere*, *torris*,  
In NIS finitum *Latium*, *lapis*, *unguis*, *aqualis*.  
Hic aut hæc *finis*, *clunis*, cum *torque canalis*,  
Dant *scrobis*, ac *anguis* : *corbis* muliebri præoptat ;  
Masculæo potiùs gaudent *pulvis*, *cinis*, *amnis*.

OS. p. 28. rule 10.

19. OS maribus dat. Sunt neutra *chaos*, *melos*, *os*, *os*,  
Postulat hæc *arbos*, *cos*, *dos*, & origine Græcâ  
*Orta eos*, *arclos*, *perimetros* cum *diametro*.

US. p. 29. rule 11.

20. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.  
Femininum voluere *palus*, *subscusque salusque*,  
Quæque *senex*, *juvenis*, cum *servio*, nomina formant,  
Et *Virtus*, *incus*. At mascula sunt *lepus* & *mus*,  
Et *pus* compositum : petit at muliebri *lagopus*.

ÆS and AUS. p. 29. rule 13.

21. ÆS neutrale petit : *laus*, *fraus*, muliebriæ sunt.

S with a consonant before it. p. 29. rule 14.

22. S dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.  
Mascula sed *pons*, *fons*, *mons*, *seps*, dum denotat anguem ;  
Et queis P præit S polysyllaba *forcipe* dempto,  
*Densque*, *chalybs*, cum *gryphe*, *rudens*, quod rariùs hæc vult.  
Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat. *scrobe*, *stirps* truncus *adeoque*.  
Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebri præoptat.

X. p. 30. rule 16.

23. Hæc petit X. *Ax*, *ex* maribus polysyllaba jungit :  
Dic tamen hæc *fornax*, *smilux*, *carex*, velut *halæx*,  
Et cum prole *panax* & *forfex* atque *supellex*.  
Mascula sunt *calix phoenix*, pro *vermeque bombyx*,  
Et *coccyx*, *fornix*, & *onyx* vas, aut *lapis* unde  
Vas fit ; *oryx*, *tradux*, *grex* his adjuget *calyxque*.  
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum *grege* cernes.  
Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis ;  
*Calx* præ parte pedis metâve laboris & *hystrix*,

*In.brex ; sardonichem jungas, rumicem silicemque :*  
*Hic magè vult cortex & obex, cum pumice, varex :*  
*Hæc potiùs limax, tymx, & cum sandice perdis :*  
*Atriplici neutrum meliùs dabò quàm muliebree.*

## II. RULES concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

*The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension. p. 32.*

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* sibi *ravis, amussis,*  
*Vis cucumisque simul, tussis, sitis atque sinapis,*  
*Cannabis & gummis, buris, conjunge mephitim.*  
 Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,  
 IS quibus est recto : sed & hæc dant in quoque quarto.  
*Sæpiùs im, turris, puppis, cum reste securis :*  
*Em, sed & im quandoque, volunt sibi febris aqualis,*  
*Et navis, pelvis, clavis ; sic lens, strigilisque,*  
*Sementisque, cutis. Cumulant his plura vetusti.*  
 Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,  
 Sæpe & Tros, Minos, heros, quantum per a formant :  
 EUS ea vult. Vix em dato Pan, eumque æthere delphin.

*Ablative Singular. p. 32.*

Sextus e vult : quibus at rectus per E clauditur i dant,  
 (Propria ni fuerint :) AL & AR neutralia iunge.  
*Deme jubar, sal, far, pur fixum nectar & hepar,*  
 Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatun.  
 I quoque dant *ir* & *im* tantum facientia quarto.  
*Cannabis at Rætis, Tigris, voluistis utrumque,*  
*Ym quibus in quarto est, ye dant, aut m modo demunt.*  
 Dant e vel i sexto, quis quartus in em vel in im fit.  
 Excipe sed *restis*, quod e semper, cum *cute*, donat.  
 I magè *sementis, strigilis* petit atque *securis*.  
 Quod simul im vel idem format, capit i sibi raro.  
 Hæc quoque dant e vel i : *finis, eum rure supe lex,*  
*Occiput & vectis : per UBI cum quæritur, urbes,*  
 Et *pugil & mugil, jungas. Per e sæpiùs effer,*  
 I raro, *civis, classis, sors, anguis & imber,*  
*Unguis, avis, postis, fustis, simul amnis & ignis.*  
 Usus plura tulit priscus, quæ respuit ætas  
 Cultior. I tantum sexto, retineto *canalis*.

*Genitive Plural. p. 33.*

Præbet ium patrius, si sextus in i fuit antè.  
*Tolle vigil, vetus, uber, inops, supplexque, memorque,*  
*Mugilis & consors, quibus & pugil & cætr adde ;*  
 Atque gradus medios ; (sed ium plus poscit.) Adhærent  
 His composita *genus, capio, facioque apputque.*  
 Sextus e si tantum dederit, capit ium genitivus.  
 AS sed ium Latiale petit : polysyllaba deme,  
 Quis magis ium placuit. Sed ium quærentibus adde  
 Nomen in IS vel in ES non crescens : iungito & NS :  
 Tolle *parens, vates, pantis, juvenisque, canisque.*  
 Donat ium *Sannus, linter, caro, dos, & os ossis,*  
*Glis, nix, noxque, cohors, mus, faux, utr : adde Quiritem,*  
 Atque *larem, litem, cotem, cor ; compositum que*

*Uncia*, quod simul *us* genuit : monosyllaba jange  
*Consona*, quæ duplex claudit. *Bos* rûd *houn* dat.

*Dative Plural of the Fourth Declension.* p. 35.

*Partus* sups, *specus*, *artus*, *æus*, dant & *lacus*, *arcus*,  
*Atque* *tribus* : sed utrumque *genu*, *portusque*, *terruque*.

### III. RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE.* p. 52.

*Hæc* viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo ;  
*Ultimus*, *ulterior* ; *prior*, & *primus* ; *proptiorque*,  
*Proximus* ; *ocyor* atque *ocysissimus*, *adjiciantur* :  
*Deterior* jungi quibus & *deterimus* ambit.

*Adjectives wanting the COMPARATIVE.* p. 53.

*Nuperus*, orba gradu medio, *novus* ac *meritus* sunt ;  
*Par*, *sacer*, *invictus*, *persuans*, & *inclutus* adde.

*Adjectives wanting the SUPERLATIVE.* p. 53.

*Hæc* superante carent : *satur* & *diuturnus* & *ingens*,  
*Aque* *senex*, *juvenis*, *adolescens*, *promus*, *optimus* ;  
*Et* finita *BILIS* propè cuncta, vel *ILIS*, & *ALIS* :  
*Cum* multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

*Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE.* p. 53.

*Anterior* solum, *sequior*, *satiorque* leguntur.

### IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

*VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and SUPINE* p. 83.

———— *Labo*, *nexo*, *cum* *ptice* nil dant.

*VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE.* p. 84.

*Quod* dat *UI* neutrum, *timeo*, *sileoque*, *supina*  
*Nulla* dabunt. *Valeo*, *placeo*, *curet* & *licet* *auser*,  
*Paret*, item *jaceo*, *caleo*, *noceo*, *doleoque* ;  
*Queis* *coalet*, *latet* atque *meret* *sociabis*, *detque*.  
*Arceo* quod simplex nescit, dant nata *supinum* :  
*Quod* retinent *taceo*, *lateo*, *soboleque* recusant.

———— *Viduata* *supinis*  
*Si* capiant *regit*, *cum* *fulget*, *turget*, & *alget*.

*VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and SUPINE.* p. 87.

*Nil* formant *lactet*, *livet*, *sateoque* *venidet*,  
*Maret*, *avet*, *poliet*, *flaret*, *cum* *denso* *glabret*.

*VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE ; and some also the PRETERITE.* p. 88.

———— *SCO.* p. 90.

———— *Disco*

*Vult* *didici* *primam* *geminas* : sic *posco*, *poposci* ;  
*Dispersit*, *composcit* *UI* dant : cuncta *supinis*  
*Orba*. *Nihil* *glisco*, *nihil* *inceptiva* creantur.

———— *VO.* p. 88.

*Nulla*, *supina* dabunt *metuo*, *pluo*, *congruo*, sicut  
*ignuo*, *cum* *sociis* ; quibus *ingruo*, *respuo* junges.

## DO. p. 91.

*Tundo* facit *tutudi*, *tunsum* compositaque *tusum*.  
*Ex cado* vult *cecid* *casum* ; sed nata *supinum*  
*(Incido* si *denfas*, *recido*, simul *occido*,) *spernunt*.  
*Præterito* *DI strido*, *rudo*, *dant*, absque *supinis*,  
*Sido*que, sed *soboli sedeo* dat *mutuo sedi*

## GO. p. 92.

Nil *vergo* capessit.

*XI clango*, *ningo*, dat et *ango*, *supinaque nulla*.

*Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation wanting the Supine.* p. 93.

*Caculit*, *gestit*, *glocit*, & *dementit*, *ineptit*,  
*Nulla supina dabunt*, cum *prosistit* atque *ferocit*.

*Dependent Verbs wanting the Participle Perfect.* p. 102.

Nil formant *vescor*, *liquor*, *medeor*, *reminiscor*,  
*frascor*, *ringor*, *prævertor*, *diffiteor*que :  
*Quis demum adjungas divertor*, *dequesetiscor*.

*Verbs wanting the first person singular.* p. 108.

*Dor*, *furo*, *for*, *der*, *fer*, *vix unquam suscipit usus*.

## V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES, &amp;c.

## I. CONCERNING FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*A vowel before another.* p. 199.

Vocalem breviant alia subeunte Latini.

Ni capit *r*, *ſio* produc : & nomina quintæ  
*E*servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciei*.  
*Anceps ius erit patrio* : sed *protrahe ætus*,  
*Alterius brevia tantum* ; commune sit *ohe*,  
*Pompei*, *Cai*, produc, conformia jungens.  
*Diamm varia* : longa *aër*, *djus*, & *cheu*,  
*Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in ai*.  
*Hic Græci variant*, nec certâ lege tenentur.

*A vowel before a mute and a liquid.* p. 200.

Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllaba eâdem,  
 Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.  
 Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviam memento.  
 Sunt *l*, *r*, liquidæ, quæ rarò jungimus *m*, *n*.

*Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs.* p. 200.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam,  
 Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis ;  
 In Græcis semper : at *præ* composita sequente.  
 Vocali breviam ; veluti *præit* atque *præustus*.

*Præterites and Supines.* p. 201.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam.  
 Tolle *bibit*, *scidit*, & *fudit*, ac *tulit* ortaque *do*, *sto*.  
 Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,  
 Ut *pario*, *peperi* ; vetet id nisi consona bina.  
 At quod *cædo* creat tangat, ceu *pedo*, secundam.  
 Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam :  
 Præter nata *sero*, *cicò*, *line*, cum *sino*, *sisto*,  
 Quæ breviant ; eo doque, *ruo* quo *junge*, *rearque*.

Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reservant.  
 Excipe sed *posui positum, genui genitumque*,  
 Et *potui*; quæ dant quoque *solvō &volvō* supina.  
 Præ tunc vocalem polysyllaba cuncta supina.  
 Producant, *atum*, quibus, *etum* finis, & *utum*:  
*fri* præterito veniens sociabis & *itum*.  
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A in the end of a word. p. 205.

Casibus A flexum brevis. Sed protrahe sextum,  
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in *as* fit.  
 Casibus haud flexum produc. Ita, cum *quia*, & *aja*,  
 Et *puta* non verbum subduxeris, *lulleque lula*.  
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, & *ginta* creata.

E in the end of a word. p. 205

E brevis. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ  
 Cum natis. Adde pluralia cuncta: secundæ  
 Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis  
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.  
 Adde à mobilibus flexis quæcunque secundi  
 Manârunt, summique gradû: adverbia quævis.  
 Sed *benè* cum *malè* corripies, *infernè*, *superne*,  
 Productis *ferme* atque *ferè* jungantur, & *ohè*.

I in the end of a word. p. 206.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.  
 His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.  
 Sic variato *mihî*, *tibi*, cum *sibi*: sed magè curtus  
 Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.  
 Siculi sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi*, vates.

O in the end of a word. p. 206.

O commune iocæ. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,  
 Græcæque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,  
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,  
 Quæ jungens & *ed*. Variant at *denuð*, *serð*,  
*Mudð*, *postremð*, *verð*; modò sed breve pones,  
 Sæpiùs *ambo*, *duo*, *scio*, corripe, & *illicð* & *imð*,  
 Et *cedo* *du* signans, *ego* quæis *homo*, cum *citò* jungo.  
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Muronî.  
 Ergò pro causa produc: secus editur anceps.

U and Y in the end of a word. p. 206.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word. p. 206.

Corripe B Latium: peregrinum at tendere malim.  
 D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.  
 L breve sit. Cum *sol*, *sal*, *nill*, tollantur Hebræa.  
 M nunc vocalis perimit: rapuere vetusti.  
 R brevis. Produc ejus dat patrius *eris*;  
 Addito *Iber*, *aër*, *ather*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.  
 At *par*, *fur*, *lar*, *Nar*, quoque *cur*, *fur*, adice longis.  
 T breve semper erit nisi quondam syncopa taret.

C and N in the end of a word. p. 207.

C produc, præter *nec*, *donec*: sed variabis



*Hic bene pronomen : fac verbum jungimus isti.*  
*N* produc. Demas *en inis* dans, quæque priore  
 Græca per *on* casus numero tenuere secundæ ;  
 Et quantum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.  
*Sin* quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum :  
*Farsitan, in, forsan, tamen, an viden'* insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word. p. 207.

AS produc. Patrio sed *adis* quod flectit, *anasque*,  
 Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartus.  
 Ponitur ES longum. Pluralia corripit Græca  
 Quæ crescunt ; velut *es* de *sum* ; *penes* additur illi ;  
 Cum neutris ; & quæ patrii penultima curta est  
 Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes.*  
 OS produc. Patrius brevis est, & *compos, & impos,*  
*Osque ossis* præbens. Rectos brevitate secundæ  
 (*O nisi det patrius :*) neutra his dein addito Graiûm.

IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word. p. 207.

Is brevior. Verùm plurales protraho casus ;  
 ISque quod in patrio mutatur, in *itis & inis*,  
 Aut *entis* ; *gratisque foris, glis, vis* quoque, non enim  
 Sen verbum fuerit : sicut & persona secunda  
 Protrahit IS, quoties *itis* plurale reponit.  
 In subiectivi *ris* est commune futu. o.  
 US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis  
 Ternæ vel quaritæ produc : numerique secundi  
 In quarta primum, quartum, quintumque ; & in *uris*,  
 Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *adis, & untis, odise* est ;  
 Aut quintus fit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.  
 Ergo prodaces venerabile nomen *Jesus*.  
 YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps,  
 Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus YN dant.

The last Syllable of a Verse. p. 203.

Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba verûs.

### III. THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

#### 1. The quantity of Derivatives. p. 208.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :  
 Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio, regala, sedes,*  
*Seciûs, humanus, penuria, mobilis, humor,*  
*Jumentum, fomes,* primam producere gaudent.  
 Corripiunt sed *arista, vadum, sopor,* atque *lucerna,*  
*Duxque ducis, stabilisque, fides, ditioque, quasillus,*  
 Nata licet longis ; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

#### 2. The Quantity of Compounds. p. 208.

Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,  
 Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.  
 At breviant nihilum cum *pejero, degero,* nec non  
*Veridicus, sociis junctis, & semisopitus*  
*Cognitus* his addes, velut *agnitus innubius,* atque  
*Pronubus* : at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,  
*Imbecillus* item : sed *agnubium* variabis.  
 Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,  
 Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.  
 Est pro breve in Græcis, pro longum ritè Latinis.

At rape quæ fundus, fugio, neptisque neposque,  
 Est festum, fari. faleor, fanumque creant.  
 Hisce profectò addes. pariterque procella, protarvus,  
 Atque propago genus, propago protrahæ vitis.  
 Propino varia, verbum propago, profundo :  
 Cum pello, curo, genitis, Proserpina junge.  
 Sz produc & DI, præter dirimo atque dies tus.  
 Est RE breve : ut viduum personis protrahæ refect.  
 Pars si componens finis prior i vel o donat.  
 Sit breve : vaticinor monstraverit, Aretophylaxque,  
 I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,  
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens  
 De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.  
 Idem masculinum produc, & ubique, & ibidem ;  
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composita diei.  
 His intro, retro, contraque & quando creata  
 (Quandoquidem excepto) bene junxeris, atque alioquir,  
 Quæque per o magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

*Synalæpha and Ecthipsis.* p. 214.

Vocalem *Synalæpha*, *Ecthipsis* & in quoque tollit,  
 Altera cum voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

*Synæresis and Dieræsis.* p. 214, and 215.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.  
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Dieræsis* unam.

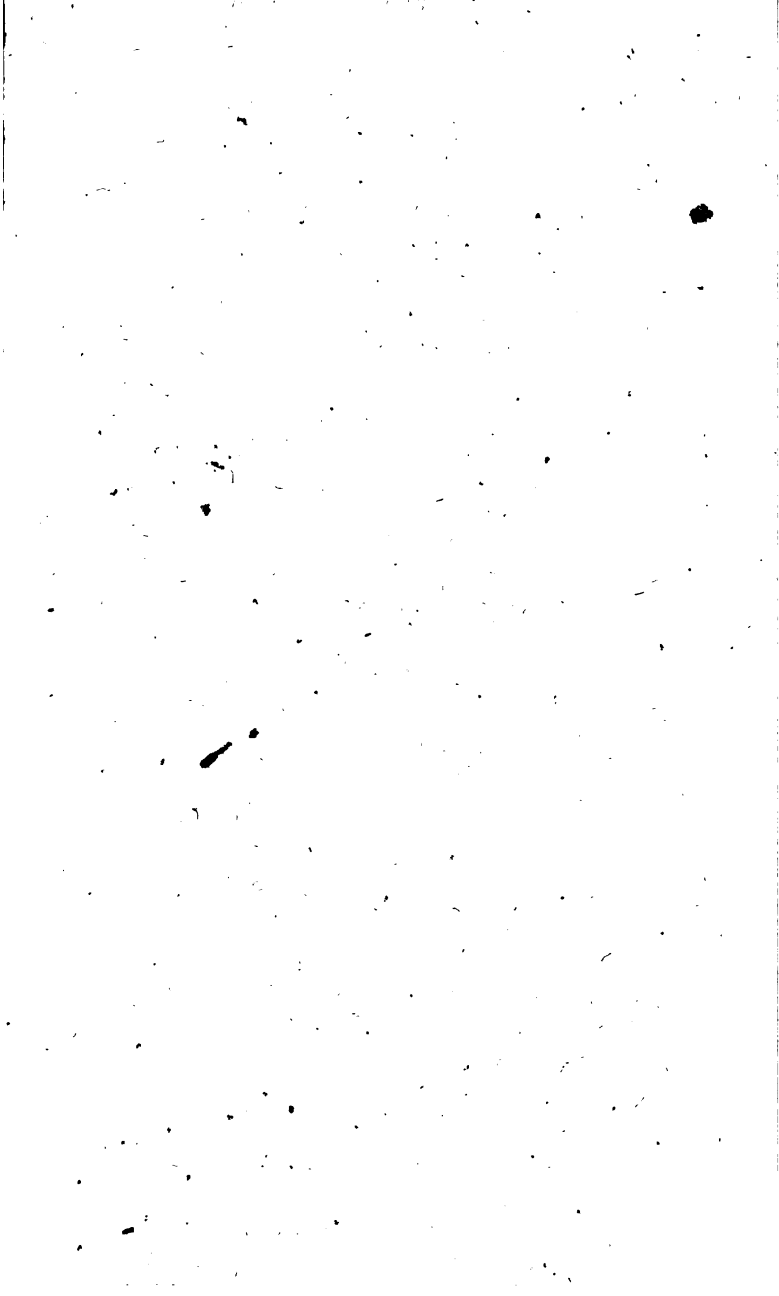
*Systolè and Diastolè.* p. 215.

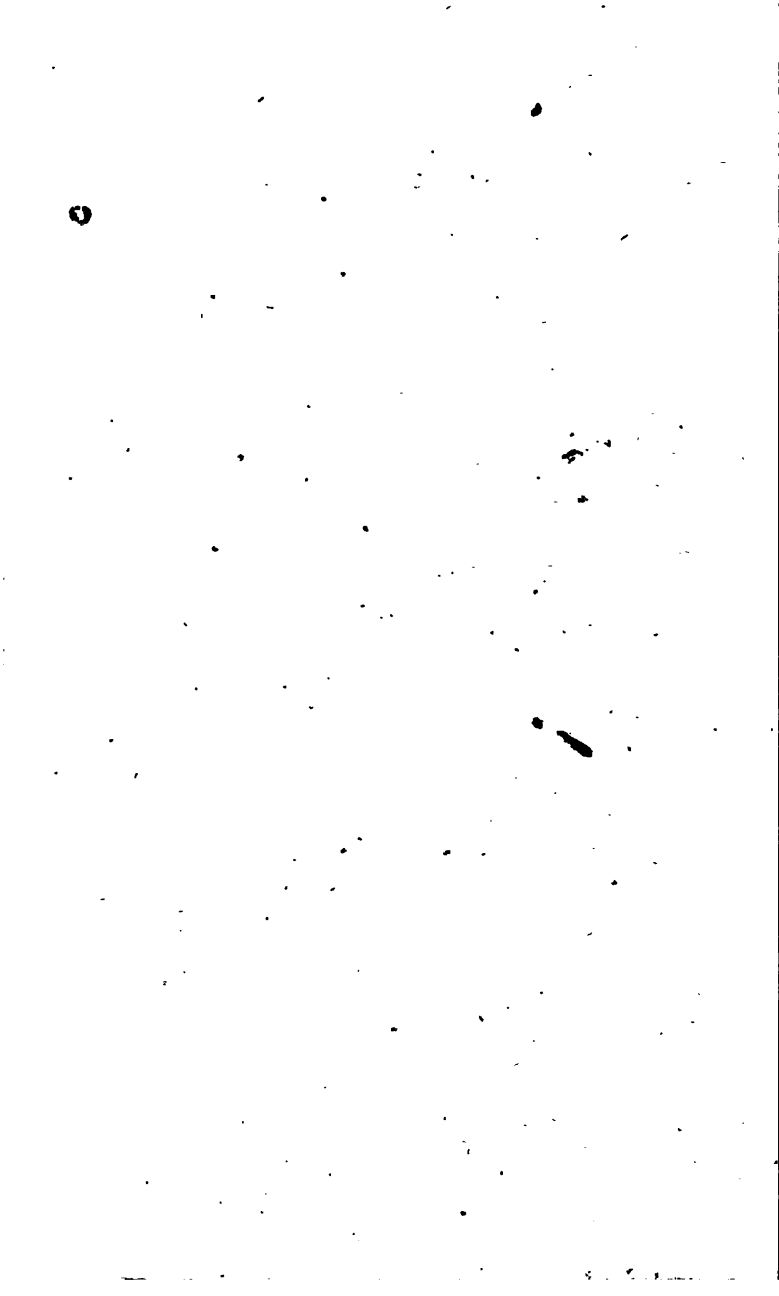
*Systola* præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.  
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastola* corripiendas.

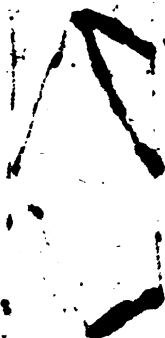
*Figures of Diction.* p. 215.

PROSTHESIS apponit capiti, sed APHERESIS aufert,  
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.  
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGÆ.  
 Constringit CRASIS distracta DIÆRESIS effert.  
 Litera si legitur transposita, METATHESIS exit.  
 ANTITHESIS dices, tibi litera si varietur.

FINIS.







1117

